

## NOTICE

" All rights reserved. Reproduction of any part of this manual in any from whatsoever without SEIKO EPSON's express written permission is forbidden.
" The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.
' All efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy of the contents of this manual. However, should any errors be detected, SEIKO EPSON would greatly appreciate being informed of them.

* The above notwithstanding SEIKO EPSON can assume no responsibility for any errors in this manual or the consequences thereof.
© Copyright 1991 by SEIKO EPSON CORPORATION
Nagano, Japan


## PRECAUTIONS

Precautionary notations throughout the text are categorized relative to 1) personal injury, and 2) damage to equipment:

DANGER Signals a precaution which, if ignored, could result in serious or fatal personal injury. Great caution should be exercised in performing procedures preceded by a DANGER heading.

WARNING Signals a precaution which, if ignored, could result in damage to equipment. The precautionary measures itemized below should always be observed when performing repair/maintenance procedures.

## DANGER

1. ALWAYS DISCONNECT THE PRODUCT FROM BOTH THE POWER SOURCE AND THE HOST COMPUTER BEFORE PERFORMING ANY MAINTENANCE OR REPAIR PROCEDURE.
2. NO WORK SHOULD BE PERFORMED ON THE UNIT BY PERSONS UNFAMILIAR WITH BASIC SAFETY MEASURES AS DICTATED FOR ALL ELECTRONICS TECHNICIANS IN THEIR LINE OF WORK.
3. WHEN PERFORMING TESTING AS DICTATED WITHIN THIS MANUAL, DO NOT CONNECT THE UNIT TO A POWER SOURCE UNTIL INSTRUCTED TO DO SO. WHEN THE POWER SUPPLY CABLE MUST BE CONNECTED, USE EXTREME CAUTION IN WORKING ON POWER SUPPLY AND OTHER ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS.

## WARNING

1. REPAIRS ON EPSON PRODUCT SHOULD BE PERFORMED ONLY BY AN EPSON CERTIFIED REPAIR TECHNICIAN.
2. MAKE CERTAIN that the source voltage is the same as the rated VOLTAGE, LISTED ON THE SERIAL NUMBER/RATING PLATE. IF THE EPSON PRODUCT HAS A PRIMARY-AC RATING DIFFERENT FROM THE AVAILABLE POWER SOURCE, DO NOT CONNECT IT TO THE POWER SOURCE.
3. ALWAYS VERIFY THAT THE EPSON PRODUCT HAS BEEN DISCONNECTED FROM THE POWER SOURCE BEFORE REMOVING OR REPLACING PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARDS AND/OR INDIVIDUAL CHIPS.
4. IN ORDER TO PROTECT SENSITIVE $\mu$ P CHIPS AND CIRCUITRY, USE STATIC DISCHARGE EQUIPMENT, SUCH AS ANTI-STATIC WRIST STRAPS, WHEN ACCESSING INTERNAL COMPONENTS.
5. REPLACE MALFUNCTIONING COMPONENTS ONLY WITH THOSE COMPONENTS RECOMMENDED BY THE MANUFACTURER; INTRODUCTION OF SECOND-SOURCE ICs OR OTHER NONAPPROVED COMPONENTS MAY DAMAGE THE PRODUCT AND VOID ANY APPLICABLE EPSON WARRANTY.

## PREFACE

This manual describes functions, theory of electrical and mechanical
operations, maintenance, and repair of the LQ-570/1 070 .
The instructions and procedures included herein are intended for the
experienced repair technician, and attention should be given to the
precautions on the preceding page. The chapters are organized as follows:
Chapter 1 - Provides a general product overview, lists specifications,
and illustrates the main components of the printer.
Chapter $2-\quad$ Describes the theory of printer operation.
Chapter $3-\quad$ Includes a step-by-step guide for product disassembly and
Chapter 4 - Includes a step-by-step guide for adjustment.
Chapter 5 - Provides Epson-approved techniques for troubleshooting.
Chapter 6 - Describes preventive maintenance techniques and lists
lubricants and adhesives required to service the equipment.
-The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

## REVISION SHEET

| REVISON | DATE ISSUED | CHANGE DOCUMENT |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | June 20, 1991 | 1st issue |
| B | Sept. 6, 1991 | Added information for the LQ-1 070: $\begin{aligned} & \text { l-i, } \mathrm{l}-\mathrm{ii}, 1-1-1-8,1-10,1-11,1-24,1-26-1-28 \\ & 2-\mathrm{i}, 2-\mathrm{ii}, 2-1-2-11,2-13-2-15,2-17,2-18 \\ & 3-\mathrm{i}, 3-\mathrm{ii}, 3-5-3-20 \\ & 4-\mathrm{i}, 4-1-4-4,4-6 \\ & 5-\mathrm{i}, 5-1-5-5,5-9,5-11-5-19 \\ & 6-\mathrm{i}, 6-1,6-4 \\ & \text { A-1, A-ii, A-1 }-\mathrm{A}-1 \mathrm{5}, \mathrm{~A}-17-\mathrm{A}-1 \mathrm{9}, \mathrm{~A}-22, \mathrm{~A}-23 \end{aligned}$ |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION<br>CHAPTER 2. OPERATION PRINCIPLES<br>CHAPTER 3. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY<br>CHAPTER 4. ADJ USTMENTS<br>CHAPTER 5. TROUBLESHOOTING<br>CHAPTER 6. MAINTENANCE<br>APPENDIX

## CHAPTER 1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

1.1 FEATURES ..... 1-1.
1.2 SPECIFICATIONS ..... 1.-3
1.2.1 Hardware Specifications ..... 1-3
1.2.2 Firmware Specifications ..... 1.9
1.3 INTERFACE OVERVIEW ..... 1.-14
1.3.1 Parallel Interface ..... 1.-14
1.4 CONTROL PANEL ..... 1-16
1.5 DIP SWITCHES AND JUMPER SETTING ..... 1-18
1.5.1 DIP Switch Settings ..... 1-18
1.5.2 Jumper Setting ..... 1.19
1.6 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS ..... 1-20
1.6.1 Self-Test ..... 1-20
1.6.2 Hexadecimal Dump Function ..... 1-20
1.6.3 Paper-out Detection and Forms Override Function ..... 1-21
1.6.4 Error Conditions ..... 1-21
1.6.5 Buzzer Operation ..... 1-21
1.6.6 Printer Initialization ..... 1-21
1.6.7 Default Values ..... 1-22
1.6.8 Sheet Loading and Sheet Ejection ..... 1-22
1.6.9 Tear-off Function ..... 1-23
1.6.10 LEVER, G, ADJUST ..... 1-24
1.6.11 printer Protection for Heavy-Duty Printing ..... 1-25
1.7 MAIN COMPONENTS ..... 1-26
1.7.1 C062 MAIN Board (Main Control Circuit Board) ..... 1-26
1.7.2 C062 PNL Board (Control Panel Circuit Board) ..... 1-27
1.7.3 C062 PSB/PSE Board (Power SupPIY Circuit Board) ..... 1-27
1.7.4 Printer Mechanism (M-5 E10/M-5E60) ..... 1-28
1.7.5 Housing ..... 1-28

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1-1. Exterior View of theLQ-570/1070 ..... 1-2
Figure 1-2. Pin Configuration ..... 1.3
Figure 1-3. Printable Area for Cut Sheets ..... 1-6.
Figure 1-4. Printable Area for Continuous Sheets ..... 1-6
Figure 1-5. Character Matrix ..... 1.-13
Figure 1-6. Data Transmission Timing ..... 1-14
Figure 1-7. Control Panel ..... 1:16
Figure 1-8. Self-Test Printout ..... 1.-20
Figure 1-9. Hexadecimal Dump Function ..... 1-20
Figure l-10. Lever Positions ..... $1 .: 24$
Figure 1-11. LQ-570/1070 Component Layout ..... 1-26
Figure 1-12. C062 MAIN Board ..... 1.26
Figure 1-13. C062 PNL Board ..... 1.27
Figure 1-14. C062 PSB/PSE Board ..... 1.-27
Figure 1-15. Model-5E1 O/5E60 Printer Mechanism ..... 1-28
Figure 1-16. Housing ..... 1.28
LIST OF TABLES
Table 1-1. Interface Options ..... $1 \cdot 1$
Table 1-2. Optional Units ..... 1-2
Table 1-3. Specifications for Cut Sheets ..... 1-4
Table l-4. Specifications for Cut Sheets
(Carbonless Duplicating Paper) ..... 1-5
Table 1-5. Specifications for Continuous Sheets ..... 1-5
Table 1-6. Envelopes ..... 1.-5
Table 1-7. Label Specifications ..... 1.5
Table 1-8. Printing (Text Mode) ..... 1-10
Table 1-9. Printing (Bit Image Mode) ..... 1.11
Table 1-10. Character Matrix and Character Size ..... 1.12
Table 1-11. Connector Pin Assignments and Signal Functions ..... 1-14
Table 1-12. Settings for DIP Switch 1 (SW1) ..... 1-18
Table 1-13. Settings for DIP Switch 2 (SW2) ..... $1-18$
Table 1-14. International Character Set Selection ..... 1.19
Table 1-15. Page Length ..... 1:19
Table 1-16. Lever Positions ..... $1-24$

### 1.1 FEATURES

The LQ-570/1 070 are small, light-weight, low-cost, printers with advanced paper handling that is compatible with the LQ-5 10/550/1010. The printer's main features are as follows:

- Use of ESC/P 2 control codes

Ability to print multi-point fonts
Ability to receive and print raster graphic images
Compatibility with the LQ/SQ series available on the market

- Printing speeds: 225 characters per second (cps) (high-speed draft, 10 characters per inch (cpi))

252 cps (draft, 12 cpi$)$
210 cps (draft, 10 cpi$)$
84 cps (LQ, 12 cpi$)$
$64 \mathrm{cps}(L Q, 10 \mathrm{cpi})$

- Optional interface card
- Clear, easy-to-read printing with standard EPSON fonts
- Multiple fonts resident in the printer

9 LQ fonts (Roman, Saris Serif, Courier, Prestige, Script, OCR-B, Script C, Orator, Orator-S)
1 draft font

- Control panel switch selection of fonts, condensed, and cut-sheet feeder (CSF) bin
- Optional tractor unit for push-pull tractor feed
- Flexible handling of continuous paper

Three ways to insert continuous paper (front/bottom/rear path)
Auto backout and auto loading (rear insertion)
Use of continuous paper without removing CSF
Attachment of standard tractor unit in either of two positions (push/pull)

- Easy handling of cut sheets with the optional cut-sheet feeder

Two ways to insert cut sheets (front/top)
Auto loading

The LQ-570/1 070 are equipped with the standard EPSON 8-bit parallel interface. Various interface options ensure compatibility with a wide variety of computers. Table 1-1 lists the interface options, Table 1-2 lists the optional units available for the LQ-570/1 070, and Figure 1-1 shows an exterior view of the LQ-570/1 070.

Table 1-1. Interface Options

| Model | Description |
| :--- | :--- |
| C82305 | Serial interface card (inch screw) |
| C82306 | Serial interface card (mini screw) |
| C82307 | 32KB serial interface card (inch screw) |
| C82308 | 32KB serial interface card (mini screw) |
| C82310 | 32KB parallel interface card |
| C82313 | 32KB IEEE-488 interface card |

Printing is not possible for the following baud rates : 1800, 200, 134.5, 110, 75 bps.
NOTES: Refer to the "Optional Interface Technical Manual" for details.
The asterisks (*) in the table above represent the last digit of the part numbers. This digit varies, depending on the country. For instance, in the U.S. the last digit is 1.

Table 1-2. Optional Units

| Model | Description |
| :--- | :--- |
| C80637* | Single-bin cut-sheet feeder (80-column) |
| C80638* | High-capacity cut-sheet feeder (80-column) |
| C80639* | Singl-bin cut sheet feeder (1 36-column) |
| C80640* | High capacity cut sheet feeder (1 36-column) |
| C80019* | Tractor unit (80-column) |
| C80022* | Tractor unit (1 36-column) |
| 7753 | Fabric ribbon cartridge (80-column) |
| 7754 | Fabric ribbon cartridge (1 36-column) |
| 7768 | Film ribbon cartridge (80-column) |
| 7770 | Film ribbon cartridge (1 36-column) |

Note: When a part number in the table above is followed by an asterisk ('), the last digit of the number varies, depending on the country. For example, in the U. S., the model number for a single-bin cut-sheet feeder ( 80 -column) is C80673).

(LQ-570)

(LQ-1070)
Figure 1-1. Exterior View of the LQ-570/1070

### 1.2 SPECIFICATIONS

This section provides specifications for the LQ-570/1 070 printer.

### 1.2.1 Hardware Specifications

Printing method
Pin configuration

Serial, impact, dot matrix
24 wires (12 X 2 staggered, diameter 0.2 mm )


Figure 1-2. Pin Configuration

| Feeding methods | Friction feed (front/top) |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Push tractor feed (rear) |
|  | Pull tractor feed (front/bottom) |
|  | Push-pull tractor feed (with optional tractor) (rear) |
| Line spacing | $1 / 6$ inch, $1 / 8$, or programmable in units of $1 / 360$ inch |
| Paper insertion | Friction feed Front or rear side |
|  | Tractor feed Front, bottom, or rear side |
| Paper-feed speed | Friction without CSF $\quad 77.6 \mathrm{msec}$. $1 / 6$-inch feed) |
|  | - 2.2 inches per second (ips) (continuous) |
|  | Friction with CSF $\quad 77.6 \mathrm{msec}$ (1/6-inch feed) |
|  | $2.2 \mathrm{ips} \mathrm{(continuous)}$ |
|  | Tractor $\quad 77.6 \mathrm{msec}$ (1/6-inch feed) |
|  | 2.2 ips (continuous) |

NOTE: The points below provide precautions for handling paper.

1. Friction feed (release lever in FRICTION POSITION).

- Paper must be loaded from the front or top entrance.
- Do not use continuous paper.
- Do not perform any reverse paper feeds within the top 8.5 mm (. 34 in.), botom 22 mm (. 87 in .) (top entrance), or bottom 40.2 mm ( 1.6 in. ) (front entrance) area.
- Do not perform reverse feeds greater than $1 / 6$ inch after a paper end has been detected.
- Use the paper tension unit.
- Do not use multi-part cut-sheet forms, except with front insertion.
- Do not perform reverse feeds greater than $1 / 6$ inch when using envelopes.

2. Push tractor feed (release lever in REAR PUSH POSITION).

- Paper must be loaded from the rear entrance.
- Release the friction-feed mechanism.
- Multi-part forms must be spot pasted beyond the perforation between the tractor holes.
- Paper for multiple copies must be carbonless multi-part paper.
- Use the paper tension unit.
- Do not perform reverse feeds greater than 4/15 inch.
- Since accuracy of paper feed cannot be assured after the paper end has been detected, please do not perform reverse feeds after detection of a paper end.

3. Push-pull tractor feed (release lever in REAR PUSH POSITION).

- Paper must be loaded from the front, rear, or bottom entrance.
- Release the friction-feed mechanism.
- Remove the paper tension unit and attach the pull tractor unit.
- Ensure that there is no slack in the paper between the platen and the pull tractor.
- Precisely adjust the horizontal position of the pull tractor and push tractor sprockets.
- Paper for multiple copies must be spot pasted beyond the perforation between the tractor holes.
- Paper for copies must be a carbonless multi-part paper.
- Do not perform reverse feeds greater than 4/15 inch.
- Do not perform reverse feeds after the paper end has been detected.

4. Pull tractor feed (release lever in PULL POSITION).

- Paper must be loaded from the front or rear entrance.
- Release the friction-feed mechanism.
- Remove the paper tension unit and attach the pull tractor unit.
- Insert the paper from either front or bottom.
- Paper for multiple copies must be spot pasted beyond the perforation between the tractor holes.
- Paper for copies must be a carbonless multi-part paper.
- Do not perform reverse feeds.

Paper specifications See tables 1-3, 1-4, 1-5, 1-6, and 1-7
Table 1-3. Specifications for Cut Sheets (One-Part Paper)

| Width | ```148 mm to 257 (*420) mm (5.8 in. to 10.1 (* 16.5) in.) (top insertion) 182 mm to 257 (*364) mm (7.2 in. to 10.1 (* 16.5) in.) (front insertion)``` |
| :---: | :---: |
| Length | 364 mm (1 4.3 in .), maximum |
| Thickness | 0.065 mm to 0.14 mm ( 0.0025 in . to 0.0055 in .) |
| Weight | 14 lb . to 24 lb . ( $52.3 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ to $90 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ ) |
| Quality | Standard paper (photocopier paper, etc.) |

Table 1-4. Specifications for Cut Sheets (Carbonless Duplicating Paper)

| Width | 182 mm to $216($ ' 364$) \mathrm{mm} \mathrm{(7.2} \mathrm{in}$.to 8.5 ( $\left.\left.^{*} 14.3\right) \mathrm{in}.\right)$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Length | 257 mm to $297 \mathrm{~mm}(10.1 \mathrm{in}$. to 11.7 in.$)$ |
| Thickness | 0.065 mm to $0.14 \mathrm{~mm}(0.0025 \mathrm{in}$. to 0.0055 in.$)-$ single sheet |
|  | 0.12 mm to $0.32 \mathrm{~mm}(0.0047 \mathrm{in}$. to 0.012 in.$)-$ total |
| Weight | 17 lb. to $24 \mathrm{lb} .\left(52.3 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right.$ to $\left.90 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)-$ single sheet |
|  | 12 lb. to $15 \mathrm{lb} .\left(40 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right.$ to $\left.58 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)-$ each |
| Quality | Carbonless duplicating paper |
| Copies | 4 sheets (1 original and 3 copies) |

(*136-column
Table 1-5. Specifications for Continuous Paper

| Width | 101 mm to $254(" 406) \mathrm{mm}\left(4.0 \mathrm{in}\right.$. to $\left.10.0\left(^{*} 16\right) \mathrm{in}.\right)$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Thickness | 0.065 mm to $0.10 \mathrm{~mm}(0.0025 \mathrm{in}$. to 0.0039 in.$)-$ single sheet |
|  | 0.065 mm to $0.32 \mathrm{~mm}(0.0025 \mathrm{in}$. to 0.012 in.$)$-total |
| Weight | 14 lb. to $22 \mathrm{lb} .\left(52.3 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right.$ to $\left.82 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)-$ single sheet |
|  | 12 lb . to $15 \mathrm{lb} .\left(40 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right.$ to $\left.58 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)-$ each |
| Quality | Standard paper or carbonless duplicating paper <br> Recycled paper (at normal temperatures) |
| Copies | 4 sheets (1 original and 3 copies) |

(*:1 36-column)
Table 1-6. Envelopes

| Size | No. 6= 166 mm X 92 mm <br> No. 10= 240 mm X 104 mm |
| :---: | :---: |
| Thickness | 0.16 mm to 0.52 mm ( 0.0063 in . to 0.0197 in .) Differences in thickness within the printing area must be less than 0.25 mm ( 0.0098 in.) |
| Weight | 12 lb . to 24 lb . ( $40 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ to $91 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ ) |
| Quality | Bond paper, standard paper, airmail |
| Copies | Not available |

NOTES: - Printing on envelopes is available only at normal temperatures and only using top insertion.

- Keep the longer side of the envelope horizontal during insertion.
- Place the left edge of a No. 6 envelope at the sheet guide setting mark.

Table 1-7. Label Specifications

| Label size | 2 1/2 in. $X$ 15/16 in. 4 in. $X$ 15/16 in. 4 in. X 1 7/16 in. |
| :---: | :---: |
| Copies | Not available |
| Thickness | 0.07 mm to 0.09 mm ( 0.0028 in . to 0.0031 in .) - base paper 0.16 mm to 0.19 mm ( 0.0063 in . to 0.0075 in .) -total |

NOTES: Printing on labels is available only at normal temperatures.

- Labels must be of the fanfold type.
- Labels with pressure sensitive paper must be spot pasted beyond the perforation between the tractor holes. The total thickness must be less than or equal to 0.3 mm ( 0.0118 in .). Labels can be printed out only if the temperature is between 5 and 35 degrees C (41 and 95 degrees F) and humidity is between 10 \% and 80 \% RH.
- Examples of labels AVERY CONTINUOUS FORM LABELS


## AVERY MINI-LINE LABELS

- Labels must be used with the pull tractor (front or bottom).
- Do not perform reverse feeds.

REV.-B
Printable area
See figures 1-3, 1-4, and 1-5

(80-column):
*1) 3.0 mm ( 0.12 in .) or more when paper width is less than 229 mm ( 9 in .).
24 mm ( 0.9 in .)(topinsertion)/26 mm ( 1.0 in .)(front insertion) or more when paper width is 229 mm ( 9.0 in .) to 257 mm (10.1 in.).
(136-column:)
3.0 mm ( 0.12 in .) or more when paper width is less than 392 mm ( 15.4 in .). 29 mm ( 1.14 in .) (top insertion) /31 mm ( 1.22 in .) (front insertion) or more when paper width is 392 mm (1 5.4 in .) to 420 mm (1 6.4 in .).

- Paper-feed accuracy cannot be assured within 22 mm ( 0.87 in .) from the bottom edge of paper (top insertion).

Paper-feed accuracy cannot be assured within 40.2 mm (1 . 58 in .) from the bottom edge of paper (front insertion).
Paper-feed accuracy cannot be assured within 22 mm ( 0.87 in .) from the top edge of paper.

Figure 1-3. Printable Area for Cut Sheets

(* 136-column)
Figure 1-4. Printable Area for Continuous Sheets
(80-column):

- 1) 13 mm ( 0.51 in .) or more when a paper width of 101 mm ( 4 in .) to 241 mm ( 9.5 in .) is used. 24 mm ( 0.9 in .)(rear insertion) $\backslash 26 \mathrm{~mm}$ ( 1.0 in .)(front/bottom insertion) or more when a paper width of 254 mm ( 10 in .) is used.
(1 36-column):
13 mm ( 0.51 in .) or more when a paper width of 101 mm to 401.3 mm ( 4 in . to 15.8 in .) is used. 15 mm or more when a paper width of 381 mm to 406 mm ( 15 in . to 16 in .) is used. 13 mm (rear insertion) ( 0.51 in .) $/ 17 \mathrm{~mm}$ (front/bottom insertion) ( 0.67 in .) is used. ( 136 -column).

| Ink ribbon | Type \#7753 black ribbon cartridge ( 80 -column) <br> \#7768 film ribbon cartridge ( 80 -column) <br> \#7754 black ribbon cartridge ( 136 -column) <br> \#7770 film ribbon cartridge ( 136 -column) <br> Color Black <br> Life 2 million characters at 48 dots/character (black ribbon) <br> ( 80 -column) 0.2 million characters at 48 dots/character (film ribbon) <br> ( 136 -column) 0.3 million characters at 48 dots/character (film ribbon) <br> Dimensions of ribbon cartridge <br> Fabric Type: <br> (80-column): 293 mm (W) X 34 mm (H) $\times 72 \mathrm{~mm}$ (D) <br> (136-column): 468.3 mm (W) X 34 mm (H) X 72 mm (D) <br> Film Type: <br> (80-column): 293 mm (W) X 34 mm (H) X 72 mm (D) <br> (136-column): 468.5 mm (W) X 34 mm (H) X 72 mm (D) |
| :---: | :---: |
| Reliability | Mean cycles between failures (MCBF) 3 million lines (excluding printhead) Mean time between failures (MTBF) 4000 power on hours (POH) ( $25 \%$ duty) |
| Life of printhead | 200 million strokes (black ribbon) <br> 100 million strokes (film ribbon) |
| Safety approvals | ```Safety standards UL1 950 with D3 (U.S. version) CSA22.2#220 EN 60950 (TUV) (European version) Radio frequency interference (RFI)``` |

FCC class $B$ (U.S. version)
VDE0871 (self-certification) (European version)
Electrical specifications 120 V version

| Rated voltage | 120 VAC |
| :---: | :---: |
| Input voltage range | 103.5 to 132 VAC |
| Rated frequency | 50 to 60 Hz |
| Input frequency | 49.5 to 60.5 Hz |
| Rated current | 2.0 A |
| Power consumption | Approx. 33 W (during a selftest in draft mode, 10 cpi ) |
| insulation resistance | 10 megohms, minimum (at 500 VDC between AC line and chassis). |
| Dielectric strength | 1000 VACrms for 1 minute or 1200 VACrms for 1 second (between AC line and chassis) |



| Environmental conditions | Temperature range 5 to 35 degrees $C$ ( 41 to 95 degrees $F$ ) -operating -30 to 60 degrees C ( -22 to 140 degrees $F$ ) |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | - in shipment container |
|  | Humidity 10 to $80 \%$ RH - operating |
|  | 5 to $85 \%$ RH - storage |
|  | Resistance to shock 1 G , within 1 ms - operating |
|  | 2 G , within 1 ms - storage |
|  | Resistance to $0.25 \mathrm{G}, 55 \mathrm{~Hz}$, max. - operating |
|  | vibration $0.50 \mathrm{G}, 55 \mathrm{~Hz}$, max. - storage |
| Physical specifications | (80-column): |
|  | Weight 6.1 kg , approx. (13.5 lbs., approx.) |
|  | Dimensions 434 mm (width) X 368 mm (depth) X 151 mm (height) |
|  | 17.4 in . (width) X 14.7 in . (depth) X 6 in . (height) |
|  | (136-column): |
|  | Weight 8.4 kg , approx. (1 8.6 lbs., approx.) |
|  | Dimension 609 mm (width) X 368 mm (depth) $\times 151 \mathrm{~mm}$ (height) |
|  | 24.4 in. (width X 14.7 (depth) X 6 in. (height) |

### 1.2.2 Firmware Specifications

| Control code | ESC/PTM level ESC/P 2 <br> (EPSON standard code for printers) |
| :---: | :---: |
| Printing direction | Bidirectional with logic seeking |
| Input data buffer | 8 KB (when SW 1-7 is OFF) |
|  | OKB (when SW 1-7 is ON) |
| Character code | 8 bits |
| Character tables | Italic character table, PC 437, PC 850, PC 860, PC 863, PC 865 (PC indicates character table for personal computer) |
| Fonts and pitches |  |
| Bit-map fonts | EPSON Roman 10, 12, 15, proportional |
|  | EPSON Saris Serif 10, 12, 15, proportional |
|  | EPSON Courier 10, 12, 15 |
|  | EPSON Prestige 10, 12 |
|  | EPSON Script 10, 12 |
|  | EPSON Script C proportional |
|  | OCR-B 10 |
|  | EPSON Orator 10 |
|  | EPSON Orator-S 10 |
|  | EPSON Draft 10, 12, 15 |
| Scalable fonts | EPSON Roman 8 pt to 32 pt |
|  | EPSON Saris Serif 8 pt to 32 pt |
| Printing modes | Selection and mixture of the following modes are allowed, excluding 15 cpi condensed mode: |
|  | O Print quality (draft/letter quality) |
|  | O Character pitch (10, 12, 15, or proportional) |
|  | 0 Condensed |
|  | O Double-width |
|  | O Double-height |
|  | O Emphasized |
|  | O Double-strike |
|  | 0 Italic |
|  | O Underlined |
|  | O Double-underlined |
|  | O Overscore |
|  | 0 Strike-through |
|  | O Outline |
|  | O Shadow |

NOTES: High-speed draft is valid if the printer status is as follows:

- High-speed draft is selected by DIP switch.
- Emphasized character mode is not selected.
- Condensed character mode is not selected.
- Draft is selected.
- No D/L (download) characters are sent to the printer,
- The horizontal dot space of characters is not set.
- No bit image is sent to the printer.
- Super/subscript is not selected.
(The printer switches back into normal mode to print emphasized, condensed, or download characters and bit images.)

| Printing speed | See tables 1-8 and 1-9. |
| :--- | :--- |
| Printing columns | See Table 1-8. |
| Character matrix | See Table 1-10. |
| Character size | See Table 1-10. |

Table 1-8. Printing (Text Mode)

| Print Pitch | Condensed | Printable Columns | Character Pitch | Printing Speed (cps) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | Draft | LQ | HSD |
| 10 | 0 | 80 (* 136) | 10 | 210 | 70 | 225 |
|  | 1 | 137 ("233) | 17.1 | 180 | 120 | - |
| 12 | 0 | 96 (* 164) | 12 | 252 | 84 | - |
|  | 1 | 160 (*272) | 20 | 210 | 140 | - |
| 15 | 0 | 120("204) | 15 | 315 | 105 | - |
|  | 1 | Invalid |  |  |  |  |

(* 136-column)
cpi: characters per inch
Cps: characters per second
LQ: letter quality
HSD: high-speed draft

Table 1-9. Printing (Bit Image Mode)

| Pins | Bit Image Printing Mode | Density (dpi) | Printable Dots | Printing Speed (ips) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8 | Single-density | 60 | 480 (*8 16) | 21.0 |
| 8 | Dual-density | 120 | 960 (* 1632) | 10.5 |
| 8 | Double-speed, dual-density | 120 | 960 ("1632) | 21.0 |
| 8 | Quadruple-density | 240 | 1920 (*3264) | 10.5 |
| 8 | CRT graphics | 80 | 640 (" 1088) | 10.5 |
| 8 | CRT graphics 11 | 90 | 720 ("1224) | 14.0 |
| 24 | Single-density | 60 | 480 (*8 16) | 21.0 |
| 24 | Dual-density | 120 | 960 (* 1632) | 10.5 |
| 24 | CRT graphics II | 90 | 720 ("224) | 14.0 |
| 24 | Triple-density | 180 | 1440 ("2448) | 7.0 |
| 24 | Hex-density | 360 | 2880 (*4896) | 7.0 |

(* 136-column)
dpi: dots per inch
ips: inches per second

REV.-A
Table 1-10. Character Matrix and Character Size

| Printing Mode | Face Matrix | HDD | Character Size | Unit ESC sp |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| High-speed draft, 10 pitch | $7 \times 22$ | 90 | $2.0 \times 3.1$ | - |
| Draft, 10 pitch | $9 \times 22$ | 120 | $1.9 \times 3.1$ | 120 |
| Draft, 12 pitch | $9 \times 22$ | 120 | $1.9 \times 3.1$ | 120 |
| Draft, 15 pitch | $7 \times 16$ | 120 | $1.0 \times 2.3$ | 120 |
| Draft, 10 pitch, condensed | - | 240 | - | 120 |
| Draft, 12 pitch, condensed | - | 240 | - | 120 |
| LQ, 10 pitch | $31 \times 22$ | 360 | $2.2 \times 3.1$ | 180 |
| LQ, 12 pitch | $27 \times 22$ | 360 | $1.9 \times 3.1$ | 180 |
| LQ, 15 pitch | $22 \times 16$ | 360 | $1.6 \times 2.3$ | 180 |
| LQ, 10 pitch, condensed | - | 360 | - | 180 |
| LQ, 12 pitch, condensed | - | 36 | 0 \| - | 180 |
| LQ, proportional | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Max. } 37 \times 22 \\ & \text { Min. } 18 \times 22 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 360 \\ & 360 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} 2.6 \times 3.1 \\ 1.0 \times 3.1 \end{gathered}$ | 180 |
| LQ, proportional, condensed | - | $\begin{aligned} & 360 \\ & 360 \end{aligned}$ | - | 180 |
| LQ, proportional, super/subscript | Max. 28 X 16 <br> Min. $12 \times 16$ | $\begin{aligned} & 360 \\ & 360 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{ccc} 1.8 \times 2.3 \\ 0.7 \times 2.3 \end{array}$ | 180 |
| LQ, proportional, super/subscript, condensed | - - | $\begin{aligned} & 360 \\ & 360 \end{aligned}$ |  | 180 |

NOTES: . HDD is horizontal dot density in dots per inch.

- Face matrix and character size indicate the size of the maximum character. This value is dependent on paper, ribbon, etc.
- Unit ESC sp (which also can be sent as unit, followed by the character string CHR(\&h20)), indicates the minimum length to be added to the right of the character specified with the ESC sp control code.
- "-" indicates that the character matrix is reshaped by printer firmware. Character width becomes half of the noncondensed character width.


(Subscript character)


Figure 1-5. Character Matrix

## REV.-A

### 1.3 INTERFACE OVERVIEW

The printer has a parallel interface with the specifications described below.

### 1.3.1 Parallel Interface

Specifications for the 8 -bit parallel interface are as follows:

Data format
Synchronization
Handshaking
Signal level
Adaptable connector
Data transmission timing

8-bit parallel
STROBE signal
BUSY and $\overline{\mathrm{ACKNLG}}$ signal
TTL-compatible
57-30360 (Amphenol) or equivalent
See Figure 1-6.


Figure 1-6. Data Transmission Timing

Table 1-11 shows the connector pin assignments and signal functions of the 8 -bit parallel interface.

Table 1-11. Connector Pin Assignments and Signal Functions

| Pin No. | Signal Name | Return Pin No. | Dir. | Functional Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | $\overline{\text { STROBE }}$ | 19 | IN | $\overline{\text { STROBE }}$ pulse to read the input data. Pulse width must be more than $0.5 \mu \mathrm{~s}$. Input data is latched at falling edge of this signal. |
| 2 | DATA 1 | 20 | IN | Parallel input data to the printer. |
| 3 | DATA 2 | 21 | IN | HIGH level means data 1. |
| 4 | DATA 3 | 22 | IN | LOW level means data 0. |
| 5 | DATA 4 | 23 | IN |  |
| 6 | DATA 5 | 24 | IN |  |
| 7 | DATA 6 | 25 | IN |  |
| 8 | DATA 7 | 26 | IN |  |
| 9 | DATA 8 | 27 | IN |  |
| 10 | $\overline{\text { ACKNLG }}$ | 28 | OUT | This pulse indicates data has been received and the printer is ready to accept more data. Pulse width is approximately $11 \mu \mathrm{~s}$. |
| 11 | BUSY | 29 | OUT | HIGH indicates the printer cannot accept more data. |
| 12 | PE | 30 | OUT | HIGH indicates paper out. This signal is effective only when the ERROR signal is LOW. |
| 13 | SLCT | - | OUT | Always HIGH output. (Pulled up to +5 V through a 3.3 K ohm resistor.) |

Table 1-11. Connector Pin Assignments and Signal Functions (Cont.)

| Pin No. | Signal Name | Return Pin No. | Dir. | Functional Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 14 | $\overline{\text { AUTO FEED-XT }}$ | - | IN | If LOW when the printer is initialized, the printer automatically performs a line feed upon input of the CR code (Auto LF). |
| 15 |  |  |  | Not used. |
| 16 | GND |  | - | Ground for twisted-pair grounding. |
| 17 | Chassis GND | - | - | Chassis ground level of printer. |
| 18 |  |  |  | Not used. |
| 19 to 30 | GND |  |  | Ground for twisted-pair grounding. |
| 31 | I NIT | 16 | IN | Pulse (width: $50 \mu \mathrm{~s}$, min., active LOW) input for printer initialization. |
| 32 | $\overline{\text { ERROR }}$ |  | OUT | LOW indicates an error has occurred in the printer. |
| 33 | GND | - | - | Ground for twisted-pair grounding. |
| 34 |  |  |  | Not used. |
| 35 |  |  | OUT | Always HIGH. (Pulled up to +5 V through 3.3 K ohm resistor.) |
| 36 | $\overline{\text { SLCT-IN }}$ | - | IN | DC 1/DC3 control is disabled. |

NOTES: 1. "Dir." indicates the direction of the signal flow as viewed from the printer.
2. "Return Pin No." denotes a twisted-pair return line.
3. The cable used must be shielded to prevent noise.
4. All interface conditions are based on TTL levels. Both the rise and fall times of all signals must be less than $0.2 \mu \mathrm{~s}$.
5. The AUTOFEED-XT signal can be set to LOW by DIP switch 2-4.
6. The $\overline{\text { SELECT-IN }}$ signal can be set to LOW by jumper 3.
7. Printing tests, including those of the interface circuits, can be performed without using external equipment by setting DATA 1- DATA 8 pins to the $\overline{\text { STROBE }}$ signal.

### 1.4 CONTROL PANEL

On the control panel are: a power button (labeled OPERATE), 7 non-lock type buttons, and 19 indicators.


Figure 1-7. Control Panel

## BUTTONS

## (1) OPERATE Button

This button turns on the power supply to the printer.

## (2) PAUSE Button

This button controls printer action. Pressing the button toggles the printer between PAUSE condition (no printing, no paper feeding, and not accepting data) and RUNNING. This button is also used in conjunction with the ALT button as a buffer clear to clear the input buffer and perform software initialization, as if ESC @ had been received.

## (3) LINE FEED/FORM FEED Button

Pressing this button performs a line feed, and holding down the button performs a form feed, irrespective of the PAUSE/RUNNING condition. This button is also used in conjunction with the ALT button as the micro reverse feed.

## (4) LOAD/EJECT Button

Pressing this button loads or ejects the paper. Refer to Section 1.6.8, Sheet Loading and Sheet Ejection. This button is also used in conjunction with the ALT button as the micro forward feed.
(5) TEAR-OFF/BIN 1/BIN 2 Button

In tractor-feed mode, pressing this button advances continuous paper to the tear-off position, and the TEAR-OFF indicator is lit. In friction-feed mode, pressing this button toggles between bin 1 and bin 2, and the selected BIN indicator is lit.
(6) ALT Button

This button is used only in combination with another button,
(7) FONT Button

Pressing this button selects a font, and pressing it continuously selects the next one, sequentially. The FONT LED indicates the currently selected font.
(8) CONDENSED Button

Pressing this button toggles the printing mode between normal and condensed, alternatively.

NOTE: Selections of the FONT and CONDENSED buttons are stored as defaults, so that the last FONT and the CONDENSED selection become effective when the printer is initialized.

INDICATORS
(1) OPERATE (green)

Lit when the printer's OPERATE button is on, and AC power is supplied.
(2) PAUSE (orange)

Lit when the printer is in PAUSE-mode (no printing, no paper feeding, and not accepting data).
(3) TEAR-OFF (orange)

Lit when the sheet is advanced to the tear-off position.
(4) DATA (orange)

Lit when the printer has received data from the host. .
(5) PAPER-OUT (red)

Lit when the paper-out detector senses no paper. Refer to Section 1.6.3, Paper-out Detection and Forms Override Function.
(6) MULTI-PART (green)

Lit when the adjust lever is positioned at the 4th step or higher,
(7) BIN 1 (green)

Lit when bin 1 is selected.
(8) BIN 2 (green)

Lit when bin 2 is selected.
(9) FONT (green) - Draft, Courier, Roman, Saris Serif, Prestige, Script, Script C, Orator, Orator-S, OCR-B These indicators show the currently selected font.
(10) CONDENSED (green)

Lit when condensed mode is selected.

REV.-A

### 1.5 DIP SWITCHES AND JUMPER SETTING

This section describes the DIP switch selections and jumper setting for the LQ-570 printer.

### 1.5.1 DIP Switch Settings

The two DIP switch banks for the printer, located on control panel, function as shown in tables 1-12 through 1-15. (Note that the status of the DIP switches is read only at power on or upon receipt of the INIT signal.)

Table 1-12. Settings for DIP Switch 1 (SW1)

| No. | Description | ON | OFF | Factory <br> Setting |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | International character set and PC selection | See Table 1-14. | ON <br> ON <br> 2 |  |
| 4 |  | ON |  |  |
| 4 | Character table selection | Graphic | Italic | OFF |
| 5 | Graphic print direction | Unidir. | Bidir. | OFF |
| $6 \mid$ High-speed draft | Invalid | Valid | OFF |  |
| 7 | Input buffer | Invalid | Valid | OFF |
| 8 | I-inch skip continuous paper | ON | OFF | OFF |

Table 1-13. Settings for DIP Switch 2 (SW2)

| No. | Description | ON | OFF | Factory <br> Setting |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Page length of continuous paper | See Table 1-15. |  | OFF <br> OFF |
| 3 | Auto tear-off | ON | OFF | OFF |
| 4 | Auto LF | ON | OFF | OFF |

Table 1-14. International Character Set Selection

| $1-1$ | $1-2$ | $1-3$ | Country | PC |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| ON | ON | ON | Us. | 437 |
| ON | ON | OFF | France | 850 |
| ON | OFF | ON | Germany | 860 |
| ON | OFF | OFF | U.K. | 863 |
| OFF | ON | ON | Denmark 1 | 865 |
| OFF | ON | OFF | Sweden | $(437)$ |
| OFF | OFF | ON | Italy | $(437)$ |
| OFF | OFF | OFF | Spain 1 | $(437)$ |

When SW 1-4 is OFF, If graphic table was selected by ESC t 1, PC becomes 437.

When SW 1-4 is ON,
if italic table was selected by ESC t O, country setting becomes U.S.

Table 1-15. Page Length

| $2-1$ | $2-2$ | Page Length |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| OFF | OFF | 11 inches |
| ON | OFF | 12 inches |
| OFF | ON | 8.5 inches |
| ON | ON | $70 / 6$ inches |

### 1.5.2 J umper Setting

If Jumper 3 is connected to GND, the $\overline{\text { SLCT-IN }}$ signal is fixed to LOW.

## REV.-A

### 1.6 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

This section describes the self-test and hexadecimal dump functions and also includes the error states, printer initialization, and buzzer operation.

### 1.6.1 Self-Test

To run the self-test using draft mode, turn the printer on while pressing the LOAD/EJECT button. To run the self-test using the letter quality (LQ) mode, turn the printer on while pressing the LINE FEED/FORM FEED button. You can stop or start self-test printing by pressing the PAUSE button. When you are satisfied with the self-test, stop the printing by pressing the PAUSE button and turn the printer off.

The firmware revision number is printed on the first line of the self-test, followed by the current DIP switch settings.

| X xxxxx |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Country/PC | SW1-1 1-2 1"3 1-4 | High speed draft | SW1-6 |
| U.S.A. | on on on off | Va 1 id | off |
| France | onon off off | Invalid | on |
| German y | on off Orl off | Receive buffer | SW1-7 |
| U.K. | on off off off | Valid | off |
| Dermark | off on on off | Inva1jd | on |
| Sweden | offon oftoft | 1 inch skip | SW1-8 |
| Italy | utfotton off | 1 rival id | off |
| Sparit | uftotfoffoff | $\cdots \mathrm{ld}$ | On |
| ${ }^{7} \mathrm{C} 437$ | on on on | 4 | SW2-1 2-2 |
| $\bullet \cdot 1 ;$ | OIIM |  | off off |

Figure 1-8. Self-Test Printout

### 1.6.2 Hexadecimal Dump Function

To put the printer in hex. dump mode, power it on while pressing both the LOAD $\backslash$ EJECT and LINE FEED/FORM FEED buttons. In hex. dump mode, the printer prints out the hexadecimal representation of the input data, along with the corresponding ASCII characters. This function is valuable for checking the data the printer has received from the host. If input data is a nonprintable character code, a period (.) is printed in the ASCII column.


Figure 1-9. Hexadecimal Dump Function

### 1.6.3 Paper-out Detection and Forms Override Function

When the paper-out detector, attached to the printer mechanism, detects a paper-end, the printer first performs a forms override. If paper loading fails, the BUSY signal goes HIGH, the PAPER OUT indicator is lit, the interface PE signal becomes HIGH, the ERROR signal becomes LOW, and the printer enters the PAUSE condition automatically.

By ignoring the paper out, the printer can print additional lines after the paper out is detected. This function is called the forms override function. After you load new paper and press the PAUSE button, the printer recovers to the RUNNING condition, and printing restarts.

The printer enters the paper-out condition only when a paper-out is detected after the printer performs paper loading.

### 1.6.4 Error Conditions

If any of the following error conditions are detected, the printer automatically enters PAUSE condition.

- Home position is not detected at printer mechanism initialization.
- Home position is detected during printing.
- The PAUSE button is pressed, and the printer enters PAUSE condition.
- A paper-out is detected after performing paper loading operation.

If parallel interface is selected, the following interface signals are output to indicate the error and to stop data transmission:

The BUSY signal becomes HIGH.
The $\overline{E R R O R}$ signal becomes LOW.
No $\overline{\text { ACKNLG }}$ pulse is sent.

### 1.6.5 Buzzer Operation

The buzzer sounds under the following conditions:
. A paper-out error is detected (beeps 3 times for 0.1 second, with 0.1 second intervals).

- Abnormal carriage movement is detected (beeps 5 times for 0.5 second, with 0.5 second intervals).
- A panel setting is accepted ( 0.1 second beep).


### 1.6.6 Printer Initialization

There are three initialization methods: hardware initialization, software initialization, and panel initialization.
(1) Hardware initialization

This type of initialization takes place when the printer power button is turned on (and the AC power cord is plugged in) or when the INIT signal is received.

When the printer is initialized, it performs the following actions:
(a) Initializes printer mechanism.
(b) Clears input data buffer.
(c) Clears downloaded character set.
(d) Clears print buffer.
(e) Returns printer settings to their default values.
(2) Software initialization

Input of the ESC @ command also initializes the printer. Printer initialization by ESC @ code does not perform functions (a), (b), and (c) above. The settings changed by the last SelecType operation are maintained.
(3) Panel initialization

This printer can be initialized by pressing the PAUSE button in combination with the ALT button. When the printer is initialized from the front panel, functions (a) and (c) above are not performed. The settings changed by the last SelecType operation are maintained.

### 1.6.7 Default Values

When the printer is initialized, the following default values are set:

| Page position | The current paper position becomes the top-of-form position |
| :--- | :--- |
| Left and right margins | Released |
| Line spacing | $1 / 6$ inch |
| Vertical tabs | Cleared |
| Horizontal tabs | Every 8 characters (relative) |
| Family number of type style | Last font selected from the panel |
| Download characters | Kept - software initialization |
|  | Cleared - hardware initialization |
| Character spacing | 10 cpi |
| Printing effects | Cleared, except condensed printing |
| Condensed printing | Last setting selected from the panel |
| Printer condition | RUN |

### 1.6.8 Sheet Loading and Sheet Ejection

The release lever can disengage the pull-tractor unit drive mechanism, giving this printer improved paper-handling for functions that utilize the release lever. These functions are described below:

Automatic cut-sheet loading without the cut-sheet feeder

Move the release lever to the friction-feed position, and place the sheet along the paper guide (top or front). A few seconds later, the sheet is automatically loaded to the top-of-form position and the printer enters the RUNNING condition.

Move the release lever to the friction-feed position, and place the sheets into the hopper of the cut-sheet feeder. Pressing the LOAD/EJECT button loads one sheet to the top-of-form position. If a paper-out is detected before printing starts, a sheet will again be loaded automatically to the top-of-form position.

Continuous paper loading and ejection (backout)

Move the release lever to the REAR PUSH position, and insert the paper into the tractor unit. Pressing the LOAD/EJECT button loads the paper automatically to the top-of-form position. If a paper-out is detected before printing starts, the paper will be loaded automatically to the top-of-form position.

If the LOAD/EJECT button is pressed after continuous paper has been loaded, the paper is ejected backward to the push tractor unit. To back out several pages, press the LOAD/EJECT button several times. Each time LOAD/EJECT is pressed, reverse feed is performed for a single page.

When the paper is at the current setting for the top-of-form position, the top-of-form adjustment function is valid for the next loaded position. At this time, the LOAD $\backslash$ EJECT button advances the paper forward, and the LINE FEED/FORM FEED button moves the paper backward.

The adjusted top-of-form position for continuous paper is saved in EEPROM, but the setting for cut sheet paper is not saved.

### 1.6.9 Tear-off Function

The below tear-off function is limited under the push tractor mode.
Auto-tear-off

The auto-tear-off function is enabled by DIP switch setting. When this function is enabled and the release lever is in the tractor position, the paper advances to the tear-off position automatically if the input data buffer is empty and the printer is in the RUNNING condition. The TEAR-OFF LED lights to indicate that you can use the LOAD/EJECT and LINE FEED/FORM FEED buttons, in combination with the ALT button, for backward and forward micro feed adjustment.

Using micro feed, adjust the paper to meet the tear-off edge. Once the tear-off position is set, this setting remains valid even after the printer is turned off or initialized. If subsequent data is sent to the printer, the paper returns to the original position automatically and printing starts. If the PAUSE button is pressed while the paper is advanced to the tear-off position, the paper returns to the original position (and the printer enters the PAUSE condition).

To access the short-tear-off function, press the TEAR-OFF button. The release lever must be in the tractor position. The paper advances to the tear-off position whether the printer is in PAUSE or RUNNING condition. At this time, the TEAR-OFF LED lights to indicate that you can use the LOAD/EJECT and LINE FEED/FORM FEED buttons, in conjunction with the ALT button, for backward and forward micro feed adjustment. Using micro feed, adjust the paper to meet the tear-off edge. Once the tear-off position is set, this setting remains valid even after the printer is turned off or initialized. If subsequent data is sent to the printer and the printer is in the RUNNING condition, the paper returns to its original position automatically and printing starts. If the TEAR-OFF button is pressed again while the paper is advanced to the tear-off position, paper returns to its original position whether the printer is in PAUSE or RUNNING condition.

## I 1.6.10 LEVER, G, ADJ UST Operation

The LEVER ,G, ADJUST must be set to the proper position for the paper thickness. If this lever has been set to the 4th step or higher, printing speed is reduced and the head energy is increased.

Table 1-16. Lever Positions

| Lever Position | Paper Thickness |
| :--- | :--- |
| 0 (2nd step) | $0.06-0.12 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| 1 (3rd step) | $0.13-0.18 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| 2 (4th step) | $0.19-0.25 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| 3 (5th step) | $0.26-0.32 \mathrm{~mm}$ |

I NOTE: If printing density becomes lighter, adjust the LEVER, G, ADJUST position one step higher.


Figure 1-10. Lever Positions

### 1.6.11 Printer Protection for Heavy-Duty Printing

This printer has a printhead protection function to prevent it from overheating and to protect the printer when the head driver voltage drops. If head temperature exceeds its maximum value, printing stops automatically until the head temperature drops to a certain value before printing resumes. Printing resumes at a lower print speed at first.

However, as the head temperature decreases, print speed increases to normal speed automatically. If the head temperature continues to increase at the lower speed, printing is stopped or resumed as temperature increases or decreases.

If the voltage supplied to the head drive circuit drops below its minimum limit as a result of heavy-duty printing, printing is interrupted immediately. When the power supply voltage recovers to a certain value, the remaining print line is printed at half speed. This protective action occurs when half or more of the wires are activated continuously.

REV.-B

### 1.7 MAIN COMPONENTS

The main components of the LQ-570/1 070 printers are designed for easy removal and replacement to maintain and repair the printer. The main components are:

1) CO62 MAIN board:
2) C062 PNL board:
3) C062PSB/PSE board:
4) $\mathrm{M}-5 \mathrm{E} 10 / 5 \mathrm{E} 60$ :
the main control board; the CPU on this board controls all main functions. the control panel board.
the power supply board.
the printer mechanism.


Figure 1-11. LQ-570/1070 Component Layout

### 1.7.1 C062 MAIN Board (Main Control Circuit Board)

The CO62 MAIN Board for the LQ-570 consists of a TMP90C041 N 8-bit CPU, an E05A50 gate array, a PROM ( 5 12K), a PSRAM ( 256 K ), a mask ROM (character generator, 2M), an EEPROM, and a hybrid I IC(STK-6022B). In addition to this, the board for the LQ-1 070 also includes a SRAM ( 64 K ).

(80-column)
(1 36-column)
Figure 1-12. C062 MAIN Board ( 80 -column and 136 -column)

### 1.7.2 C062 PNL Board (Control Panel Circuit Board)

The C062PNL board is the LQ-570/1070 control panel, which includes the indicator LEDs, switches, I and DIP switches.


Figure 1-13. C062PNL Board

### 1.7.3 C062 PSB/PSE Board (Power Supply Circuit Board)

The power supply unit consists of a switching regulator circuit, which converts the AC line voltage to the DC voltages (for example, +35 V and +5 V ) used by the printer. The C062 PSB board is 120 V input type, and the CO62PSE board is $220 \backslash 240 \mathrm{~V}$ input type.


Figure 1-14. C062 PSB/PSE Board

REV.-B

### 1.7.4 Printer Mechanism (M-5 E10/M-5E60)

The M-5E10/M-5E60 printer mechanism was developed specifically for use with LQ-570/1 070 printer. The components include a carriage motor, carriage mechanism, paper-feed motor, paper-feed mechanism, ribbon-feed mechanism, printhead, and sensors. This printer mechanism allows three ways of paper insertion.


This picture shows an 80 -column Printer. The M-5E10 and M-5E60 differ in width only.

Figure 1-15. Model-5E10/5E60 Printer Mechanism

### 1.7.5 Housing

I The LQ-570/1 070 housing consists of the upper, lower, and front cases. The front case houses the control panel board. The lower case contains the printer mechanism, the main control circuit board, and power supply circuit board.


Figure 1-16. Housing (LQ-570/LQ-1070)

## CHAPTER 2 OPERATION PRINCIPLES

2.1 OVERVIEW OF PRINTER MECHANISM OPERATION ..... 2-1
2.1.1 Printhead Mechanism .....  2.1
2.1.2 Carriage Movement Mechanism ..... -2-2
2.1.3 Paper Feed Mechanism ..... 2-3
2.1.3.1 Paper Advance Mechanisms ..... 2-3
2.1.3.2 Paper Insertion Entrances ..... "."" 2-6
2.1.4 Ribbon Advance Mechanism ..... 2-10
2.2 POWER SUPPLY OPERATION ..... $2-11$
2.2.1 Power Supply Overview ..... 2-11
2.2.2 SupPly Circuit Operation ..... 2.11
2.3 CONTROL CIRCUIT OPERATION ..... 2-13....
2.3.1 Control Circuit Operation Overview ..... 2-13
2.3.2 Reset Circuit ..... 2-15
2.3.3 Sensor Circuits ..... 2-16
2.3.4 MOTOR, CR Drive Circuit ..... 2.17
2.3.5 MOTOR, PF Drive Circuit ..... 2-18
2.3.6 Printhead Drive Circuit ..... 2-19
2.3.7 Parallel Interface Circuit ..... 2.20
2.3.8 EEPROM Control Circuit ..... 2.20
LIST OF FIGURES
Figure 2-1. How the Printhead Works ..... 2-1
Figure 2-2. Carriage Movement ..... 2-2
Figure 2-3. Paper-Thickness Gap LEVER, G, ADJUST Movement ..... 2.2
Figure 2-4. Top Entrance Friction Feed ..... 2-3
Figure 2-5. Push Tractor Operation ..... $2 \cdot 4$
Figure 2-6. Pull Tractor Operation ..... 2-5
Figure 2-7. Push-Pull Tractor Operation ..... 2.5
Figure 2-8. LEVER, RELEASE Movement ..... 2-6
Figure 2-9. Paper Path for Top Entrance Friction Feed ..... 2-6
Figure 2-10. Paper Path for Rear Entrance Push Tractor Feed. ..... 2-7
Figure 2-11. Paper Path for Rear Entrance Push-Pull Tractor Feed ..... 2-7
Figure 2-12. Paper Path for Bottom Entrance Pull Tractor Feed.. ..... 2-8
Figure 2-13. Paper Path for Front Entrance Friction Feed ..... 2-9
Figure 2-14. Paper Path for Front Entrance Pull Tractor Feed. ..... 2-9
Figure 2-15. Ribbon Advance Mechanism ..... 2-10
Figure 2-16. Power Supply Circuit Block Diagram ..... 2-12
Figure 2-17. Control Circuit Block Diagram ..... 2-13
Figure 2-18. Data Flow .....  2.14
Figure 2-19. Reset Circuit Block Diagram ..... 2-15
Figure 2-20. RESET Signal Timing ..... 2-16
Figure 2-21. Sensor Circuit Block Diagram ..... 2-16
Figure 2-22. MOTOR, CR Drive Circuit ..... 2-17
Figure 2-23. MOTOR, PF Motor Drive Circuit ..... 2-18
Figure 2-24. Printhead Drive Circuit ..... 2.19
Figure 2-25. Head Drive Signal Output Timing ..... 2-19
Figure 2-26. Parallel Interface Circuit ..... 2-20
Figure 2-27. EEPROM Control Circuit ..... 2-20
LIST OF TABLES
Table 2-1. Paper Advance Methods and Paper Paths ..... 2-3
Table 2-2. Ribbon Advance Gear Linkage ..... $2 \cdot 10$
Table 2-3. Power Supply Boards ..... 2.11
Table 2-4. Power Supply Output Voltages and Applications ..... 2-11
Table 2-5. Functions of the Main IC and Circuits ..... 2-14
Table 2-6. MOTOR, CR Drive Modes ..... 2-17

### 2.1 OVERVIEW OF PRINTER MECHANISM OPERATION

This section describes the PRINTER MECHANISM of the Model-5E10/5E60 printer unit and explains how the printer works. The Model-5E10/5E60 has a PRINTER MECHANISM that features a 24 -pin impact dot printhead for serial printing. There are four main parts to the printer mechanism: 1) the printhead mechanism, 2) the carriage movement mechanism, 3) the paper advance mechanism, and 4) the ribbon advance mechanism. Each of these is described below.

### 2.1.1 Printhead Mechanism

The printhead mechanism consists of the printhead itself, the ink ribbon, and the PLATEN. The printhead contains 24 wires in a zigzag arrangement in two rows of 12. A drive coil is provided for each of these wires to make the wires move in and out of the printhead and print dots independently of each other. The basic way that the wires are driven is described in the four steps below.
१. The control circuit outputs the drive signal to the printhead drive circuit. This changes the printhead drive voltage, and current flows through the corresponding printhead coil. The coil acts as a solenoid and generates a magnetic force.
2. This induced force causes the plate to approach the coil rod and the associated dot wire is rapidly ejected to impact on the platen.
3. The dot wire presses the ink ribbon up against the paper as it hits the platen, and in this way prints a dot on the paper.
4. As soon as the current through the coil is switched off, the force induced in the coil rod stops. The plate then returns to its original position (its position before the coil was energized) through the action of the plate spring. After the dot wire hits the platen, the rebounding force of hitting the platen works together with the wire return spring to pull the wire back to its original position in relation to the plate.


Figure 2-1. How the Printhead Works
Figure 2-1 shows the action of the PRINTER MECHANISM when a single dot is printed. The printhead tends to heat up after a period of continuous printing. To minimize the possibility of the dot wire drive coils overheating within the printhead and any loss of performance, the head is equipped with a thermistor that detects the head temperature. When this thermistor detects changes in the printhead temperature, the voltage signal changes. This signal change is read by the control circuit for feedback control.

REV.-B

### 2.1.2 Carriage Movement Mechanism

A timing belt is connected to the carriage on the lower side. With the printhead installed, this carriage moves in either direction along the SHAFT, CR, GUIDE. The carriage is driven by the MOTOR, CR a stepping motor that drives the TIMING BELT via the BELT PULLEY. The DETECTOR ASSY., HP DETECTS when the carriage is in the home position.


Figure 2-2. Carriage Movement

The paper-thickness LEVER, G, ADJUST allows the printer to use different weights of paper (different thicknesses). The user controls this lever and alters the platen gap on the SHAFT, CR, GUIDE by changing its position. Changing the position of the lever rotates the CHAFT, CR, GUIDE and moves the carriage either toward or away from the PLATEN. Moving the paper-thickness LEVER, G, ADJUST to the fourth position or higher slows down the printing speed to protect the printhead. The PG sensor reads the current position of the paper-thickness LEVER, G, ADJUST.


Figure 2-3. Paper-Thickness LEVER, G, ADJ UST Movement

### 2.1.3 Paper Feed Mechanism

Cut sheet paper is advanced by friction feed. Continuous form paper is advanced using a tractor feed mechanism.
There are three ways to advance the paper with tractor feed: using the push tractor, using the pull tractor, and using the push and pull tractors together. Any one of these three tractor configurations can feed paper through the printer. In normal operation, the printer is set up with one tractor, which functions as either a push tractor or pull tractor, depending on where it is attached to the printer body. To use the push-pull tractor feed method, an optional tractor must be attached in addition.

There are also four ways to insert paper into the printer. Different paper paths are used for different types of paper. Table 2-1 lists which paper paths can be used for each of the various paper advance methods.

Table 2-1, Paper Advance Methods and Paper Paths

|  | Paper Insertion (Paper Paths) |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Paper Advance Method | Rear <br> Entrance | Front <br> Entrance | Bottom <br> Entrance | Top <br> Entrance |
| Friction Feed | No | OK | No | OK |
| Push Tractor | OK | No | No | No |
| Pull Tractor | No | OK | OK | No |
| Push-pull Tractor Feed | OK | No | No | No |

### 2.1.3.1 Paper Advance Mechanisms

This section describes how the friction feed and tractor feed mechanisms work to advance the paper in the printer.

## Friction Feed Method

The paper is held between the platen and paper advance' roller, and between the paper eject roller and paper eject unit cover. The paper-feed pinion gear, turning in the direction of the black arrow, drives the COMBINATION GEAR, 8.5, 30. The COMBINATION GEAR, 8.5, 30 turns the SPUR GEAR, 34, paper-feed rollers, and top ROLLER ASSY., PAPER EJECT. The paper then advances in the direction of the white arrow.

The paper advance roller spring holds the paper against the platen. Setting the LEVER, G, ADJUST to the tractor feed position releases this pressure and frees the paper. Figure 2-4 illustrates friction feed when paper is inserted through the top entrance.


Figure 2-4. Top Path Friction Feed 2-3

REV.-B

## Push Tractor Method

When the push tractor is selected, the SPUR GEAR, 16 engages the SPUR GEAR, 17 (Tractor gear) on the TRACTOR ASSY. COMBINATION GEAR, 8.5, 30 is driven by the paper-feed gear, which in turn is driven by the paper-feed motor pinion gear. The paper-feed pinion gear, when turning in the direction of the black arrow, results in pushing the paper through the mechanism.

I During tractor feeding, the LEVER, G, ADJUST is set to the tractor position to disengage the friction drive. This releases the pressure between the paper advance roller and the platen. Figure 2-5 illustrates push tractor operation.


Figure 2-5. Push Tractor Operation

Pull Tractor Method
Using pull tractor feed to advance the paper is basically the same as using push tractor feed. In push tractor feed, the TRACTOR ASSY. (paper advance mechanism) is before the paper entrance. It pushes the paper through the PRINTER MECHANISM.Pull tractor feed,however, has the opPosite arrangement, with the tractor situated after the paper entrance. Since it pulls the paper through the PRINTER MECHANISM, it requires no paper tension unit. Figure 2-6 illustrates pull tractor operation tractor when paper is inserted through the bottom path.


Figure 2-6. Pull Tractor Operation

## Push-Pull Tractor Method

This is a combination of the push tractor and pull tractor methods. Two tractors are used, one in frent of and one behind the paper entrance, to advance the paper. They act simultaneously to push and pull the paper through the PRINTER MECHANISM. Figure 2-7 illustrates push-pull tractor operation.


Figure 2-7. Push-Pull Tractor Operation

REV.-B
The LEVER, RELEASE switches between friction feed and tractor feed. Setting the LEVER, RELEASE to the friction feed position presses the paper advance roller against the PLATEN. Setting the release lever to the tractor feed position releases this pressure, so that the paper advance roller separates from the PLATEN. The DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE senses the current position of the LEVER, RELEASE.


Figure 2-8. LEVER, RELEASE Movement

### 2.1.3.2 Paper Insertion Entrances

This section describes the different ways to feed paper into the printer.

Top entrance paper insertion
When you feed paper into the printer through the top entrance, the method to advance the paper is friction feed.

There are two paper-out detectors: the front paper-out detector is in front of the PRINTER MECHANISM and the rear paper-out detector is behind the PRINTER MECHANISM. When paper is inserted through the top entrance, the rear detector senses when the paper runs out.


Figure 2-9. Paper Path for Top Entrance Friction Feed

## Rear entrance paper insertion

When you feed paper into the printer through the rear entrance, the method to advance the paper can be: the push tractor, or the push-pull tractor. The rear paper-out detector senses when the paper has run out.


Paper Feed Roller

Figure 2-10. Paper Path for Rear Entrance Push Tractor Feed


Figure 2-11. Paper Path for Rear Entrance Push-Pull Tractor Feed

REV.-B
Bottom entrance paper insertion
When you feed paper into the printer through the bottom entrance, the pull tractor advances the paper. The front paper-out detector senses when the paper runs out.


Figure 2-12. Paper Path for Bottom Entrance Pull Tractor Feed

Front entrance paper insertion
When you feed paper into the printer through the front entrance, the paper can be advanced either with friction feed or the pull tractor. The front paper-out detector senses when the paper runs out.


Figure 2-13. Paper Path for Front Entrance Friction Feed


Figure 2-14. Paper Path for Front Entrance Pull Tractor Feed

REV.-B

### 2.1.4 Ribbon Advance Mechanism

The ribbon drive gear advances the ribbon through a gear linkage. This arrangement of gears makes the ribbon drive gear always rotate in a counterclockwise direction, regardless of the direction the carriage is moving.

Table 2-2. Ribbon Advance Gear Linkage

| Direction of Carriage Movement | Gear Linkage |
| :---: | :---: |
| Left to right (arrow ${ }^{\text {a }}$ ) | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { PULLEY, DRIVEN Ribbon transmission gear } \\ & \text { COMBINATION GEAR (1) COMBINATION GEAR (3) } \\ & \text { COMBINATION GEAR (4) RATCHET, RD } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |
| Right to left (arrow $\downarrow$ ) | PULLEY, DRIVEN $\leftrightarrows$ Ribbon transmission gear $\zeta$ COMBINATION GEAR (1) $\zeta$ COMBINATION GEAR (2) $\square$ RATCHET, RD |

The ink ribbon within the cartridge case is an endless ribbon that is held against the ribbon advance roller by the pressure of the ribbon grip roller. The ribbon advance roller, linked to the ribbon drive gear, winds the ink ribbon.

The ribbon brake spring, attached to the exit slot of the cartridge case, prevents slack in the ribbon and keeps the ribbon tension correct, The ribbon mask keeps the paper clean by preventing the ribbon from brushing against the paper.


Figure 2-15. Ribbon Advance Mechanism

### 2.2 POWER SUPPLY OPERATION

The printer can be powered by either of two power supply boards: the 120 V CO62PSB board or the 220/240 V C062PSE board. The only difference in the way these two boards operate is in the primary circuitry. How they work to supply power to the printer is identical. These power boards output the DC current necessary to drive the printer control circuits and printer drive mechanism. Table 2-3 shows the input voltages and fuse ratings for these boards.

Table 2-3. Power Supply Boards

| Board | input Voltage (VAC) | Fuse F1 Rating |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| C062 PSB | 103.5 to 132 | $2.5 \mathrm{~A} / 125 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| C062 PSE | 198 to 264 | $1.25 \mathrm{~A} / 250 \mathrm{~V}$ |

### 2.2.1 Power Supply Overview

The power supply board has two power output lines that supply power to the various control circuits and drive mechanisms. Table 2-4 lists the parts of the printer that run off these two DC output supply voltages.

Table 2-4. Power Supply Output Voltages and Applications

| Output Supply Voltage (DC) | Applications |
| :--- | :--- |
| +35 v | MOTOR, CR drive <br> MOTOR, PF drive <br> Printhead drive |
| +5 v | CO62 MAIN board logic circuitry <br> Various sensors <br> Control panel LEDs <br> MOTOR, PF hold |

### 2.2.2 Supply Circuit Operation

Figure 2-16 shows the power supply circuitry in block diagram form. AC power feeds into the printer from the external power source. A filter circuit removes the noise. The AC voltage then undergoes full wave rectification and is smoothed to produce the direct current supply voltage. This voltage is fed through a switching circuit and secondary smoothing circuit to produce the stepped down +35 VDC supply. A +35 V line voltage detector circuit is connected to the switching circuit. This feedback control arrangement ensures that the +35 VDC supply is kept stabilized.

The +5 VDC supply is achieved by feeding the +35 VDC line through the +5 VDC power supply circuit. This circuit further steps down the +35 VDC voltage and outputs a stabilized +5 VDC supply.

There are two main features of the power supply circuit. First, the power supply switch is in the secondary circuitry. When this switch is turned off, the switching circuit is de-energized and output of the +35 VDC supply stops. However, since the switch is in the secondary circuitry, while the printer remains plugged into the external AC supply current continues to flow in the primary circuitry, whether the power supply switch is turned off or on. For this reason, before you perform any maintenance work, you must disconnect the printer from the external AC power supply by unplugging it from the power source.

REV.-A
Second, there are four circuits to protect the supply circuitry and avoid danger. The +5 VDC line contains a current overload protection circuit and a voltage overload protection circuit. The current overload protection circuit is part of the +5 VDC supply circuit. It cuts the +5 VDC line if the current is too great. The +5 V voltage overload protection circuit cuts the supply if the voltage reaches or exceeds +7 VDC. It stops the switching circuit operation, which stops the output of the +35 VDC line.

The +35 VDC line has a voltage overload protection circuit and a voltage drop protection circuit. The +35 V voltage overload protection circuit cuts the supply if the voltage reaches or exceeds +36 VDC. It stops the switching circuit operation, which stops the output of the +35 VDC line. The voltage drop protection circuit protects the printer from such damage as might occur from short circuiting in the secondary circuitry of the +35 VDC line. If a voltage drop is detected, it stops the switching circuit operation, which stops the output of the +35 VDC line.


Figure 2-16. Power Supply Circuit Block Diagram

### 2.3 CONTROL CIRCUIT OPERATION

The control circuit consists of two boards: the CO62 MAIN board, which acts as the main board, and the C062PNL board, which acts as the control panel board. This section describes how these boards work.

### 2.3.1 Control Circuit Operation Overview

The printer CPU is an 8-bit CPU TMP90C041 running at 10 MHz . It oversees control of all the components of the printer. The E05A50 gate array contains various memory management functions that control the assignment of the memory and $1 / O$ areas. Rationalization and simplification of the circuitry is achieved through use of the STK-6022B, which holds all the driver circuits for driving the PRINTER MECHANISM on a single chip. Figure 2-17 shows the control circuits in block diagram form. I C062PNL Board


## PRINTER MECHANISM

GA
Gate array
DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE Platen gap sensor DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE Release sensor

DETECTOR ASSY., HP Home position sensor MOTOR, CR Carriage motor MOTOR, PF Paper advance motor DETECTOR ASSY., PE, FRONT Front paper-out detector (positioned in front of the PRINTER MECHANISM) DETECTOR ASSY., PE, REAR Rear paper-out detector (positioned behind the PRINTER MECHANISM)

Figure 2-17. Control Circuit Block Diagram

REV.-B
Table 2-5 lists the functions of the main components and circuits of the printer. The CPU converts the print data sent from the host computer to image data (the print image). The image data is then loaded to RAM. Each line of data is processed sequentially. The CPU transfers the print data to the printhead drive circuit. The CPU sends the printhead drive pulse to the printhead drive circuit. The length of this pulse corresponds to the printhead drive voltage. The head drive circuit then outputs the head drive signal.


Figure 2-18. Data Flow
Table 2-5. Functions of the Main IC and Circuits

| IC or Circuit | Location | Functions |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| TMP90C041 | 1C | Receives data from the host computer and loads the data to the input <br> buffer in RAM (under interrupt processing control). Expands the input data <br> held in the buffer to create image data. Loads this image data to the <br> image buffer in RAM. Transfers the image data to the printhead drive <br> circuit. Also controls various parts of the PRINTER MECHANISM, such as <br> the motors. |
| E05A50 | 4D | This is a gate array consisting of three components configured on a <br> single chip: <br> Memory Management Unit <br> Handles CPU memory in ROM, RAM, and mask ROM, and assigns <br> addresses for other devices. <br> Parallel Interface (Parallel I/F) <br> Holds the parallel interface functions. <br> Reset Circuit <br> Contains the circuit that generates the RESET signal. |

Table 2-5. Functions of the Main IC and Circuits (Cont.)

| IC or Circuit | Location | Functions |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| STK-6022B | 2A | This is a single chip that houses drive circuits for the printhead, MOTOR,CR and MOTOR, PF of the PRINTER MECHANISM. The chip also includes the various sensor input circuits for the PRINTER MECHANISM. |
| PROM | 5E | PROM contains the program that runs the CPU. |
| RAM | $\begin{aligned} & 6 \mathrm{E} \\ & 1 \mathrm{E} \end{aligned}$ | Holds the CPU working area and the various buffers. (1 E is not used for an 80 -column device and is not installed.) |
| MROM <br> (Mask ROM) | $\begin{aligned} & 3 E \\ & 4 E \end{aligned}$ | Holds the character design (also called the character generator). |
| EEPROM | 4C | EEPROM is an electronically writable and erasable ROM used to hold such information as the TOF position. |
| Vref Circuit | - | This is a circuit for generating the reference voltage used in the $A / D$ convertor within the CPU. |

### 2.3.2 Reset Circuit

Figure 2-19 shows the reset circuit in block diagram form. The reset circuit issues the $\overline{\operatorname{RESET}}$ signal. Each part of the control circuits is initialized when this $\overline{R E S E T}$ signal is received. The conditions when the $\overline{\operatorname{RESET}}$ signal is output are described below.

## When turning on the power supply

Immediately after the power has been turned on, STK-6022B (2A) outputs the VCCON pulse. E05A50 (4D) receives this pulse and then outputs the DISC pulse. The electrical charge in the condenser within the STK-6022B is then discharged. After this, STK-6022"B outputs the THLD signal, and EO5A5O then outputs the $\overline{R E S E T}$ signal. After a certain time has elapsed, the charge in the condenser in the STK-6022B builds up again. The THLD signal is canceled and then the $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ signal is canceled.

Resets performed by the CPU itself (CPU self-reset)
The CPU outputs the $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ signal if there is a $\overline{\text { RESET request for EO5A50 and if EO5A50 has output }}$ the DISC pulse.


Figure 2-19. Reset Circuit Block Diagram


Figure 2-20. $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ Signal Timing

### 2.3.3 Sensor Circuits

Figure 2-21 shows the sensor circuits in block diagram form. Detection of any excessive printhead temperature causes the TEMP2 signal to be sent directly to the CPU. Other signals, such as the CRHOME signal, pass through the STK-6022B unit before reaching the CPU. Terminals P50 to P55 on the CPU are used for the $A / D$ convertor.

The Vref circuit generates the AID convertor reference voltage Vref.


Figure 2-21, Sensor Circuit Block Diagram

### 2.3.4 MOTOR, CR Drive Circuit

Figure 2-22 shows the MOTOR, CR drive circuit. An open-loop, constant-current drive arrangement is used for running the MOTOR, CR. The motor is driven by 2-2 phase excitation and 1-2 phase excitation. 2-2 phase excitation corresponds to two 1-2 phase excitation steps. Thus, for each single step phase change of a 2-2 phase excitation motor, the carriage moves $1 / 120$ inch. For each single step phase change of a 1-2 phase excitation motor, the carriage moves $1 / 240$ inch.

The MOTOR, CR drive circuit of the STK-6022B detects the amount of current flowing in the MOTOR, CR coil and regulates this current. The current flowing through the coil varies, depending on the speed of the MOTOR, CR. The amount of current is set by the CPU via the EO5A5OI/O port. Signals are sent to SELR 1 to SELR4 on the STK-6022B. The STK-6022B sets the coil current to correspond to the MOTOR, CR speed.

Ports P60 to P63 on the CPU are used exclusively as control ports for the stepping motor.


Figure 2-22. MOTOR, CR Drive Circuit

Table 2.6. MOTOR, CR Drive Modes

| Drive Mode | Excitation Type | Drive Frequency Type | Standard Print Character |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $3.214 X$ speed | $2-2$ phase | 2700 pps | High Speed Draft |
| 3 X speed | $2-2$ phase | 2520 pps |  |
| $2 X$ speed | $2-2$ phase | 1680 pps |  |
| $1.5 \times$ speed | $1-2$ phase | 2520 pps |  |
| $4 / 3 X$ speed | $1-2$ phase | 2240 pps |  |
| $1 X$ speed | $1-2$ phase | 1680 pps |  |
| $2 / 3 X$ speed | $1-2$ phase | 1120 pps |  |
| $1 / 2 X$ speed | $1-2$ phase | 840 pps |  |

REV.-B
| 2.3.5 MOTOR, PF Drive Circuit
The printer uses a stepping motor to advance the paper. The minimum amount of paper that can be advanced is $1 / 360$ inch. The motor is a $\mathbf{2 - 2}$ phase or $\mathbf{1 - 2}$ phase, constant-voltage drive type. P70 to
I P73 on the CPU are the control ports for the stepping motor. MOTOR, PF phase data is output through these ports. PFA to PFD are turned on and off within the STK-6022B according to this phase data sent from the CPU.

When the MOTOR, PF is running, the voltage supplying the coil of the MOTOR, PF is +35 V . When the MOTOR, PF is not running and is in hold status, the supply voltage to the coil is +5 V . Switching between these two supply voltages occurs at the PFCOM terminal of the STK-6022B when PFENB is turned on or off.


Figure 2-23. MOTOR, PF Drive Circuit

### 2.3.6 Printhead Drive Circuit

Figure 2-24 shows the printhead drive circuit in block diagram form. The print data already has been expanded to create the image data. The CPU splits up this data three times and transfers this information to the latch circuit within the STK-6022B. The CPU samples the voltage of the +35 V line via the A/D convertor (see Section 2.3.3).

The CPU outputs a pulse via the CPU time output port P83. The length of this pulse corresponds to the voltage of the +35 V line. This pulse becomes the head drive signal. In this way, STK-6022B outputs head drive signals (signals HD 1 to HD24) that relate to voltage levels through the length of the pulses. These signals are output to the head for each of the sections of print data that were created by subdividing the data three times before sending.

By sampling the +35 V line voltage and determining the length of the head drive signal, it is possible to maintain the energy supplied to the head at a constant level. If the voltage of the +35 V line is HIGH, the CPU shortens the output pulse. If the voltage of the +35 V line is LOW, the CPU lengthens the output pulse.

Figure 2-25 shows the timing of-the output of the head drive signal.


Figure 2-24. Printhead Drive Circuit


Figure 2-25. Head Drive Signal Output Timing

### 2.3.6 Printhead Drive Circuit

Figure 2-24 shows the printhead drive circuit in block diagram form. The print data already has been expanded to create the image data. The CPU splits up this data three times and transfers this information to the latch circuit within the STK-6022B. The CPU samples the voltage of the +35 V line via the $\mathrm{A} / \mathrm{D}$ convertor (see Section 2.3.3).

The CPU outputs a pulse via the CPU time output port P83. The length of this pulse corresponds to the voltage of the +35 V line. This pulse becomes the head drive signal. In this way, STK-6022B outputs head drive signals (signals HD 1 to HD24) that relate to voltage levels through the length of the pulses. These signals are output to the head for each of the sections of print data that were created by subdividing the data three times before sending.

By sampling the +35 V line voltage and determining the length of the head drive signal, it is possible to maintain the energy supplied to the head at a constant level. If the voltage of the +35 V line is HIGH, the CPU shortens the output pulse. If the voltage of the +35 V line is LOW, the CPU lengthens the output pulse.

Figure 2-25 shows the timing of the output of the head drive signal.


Figure 2-24. Printhead Drive Circuit


Figure 2-25. Head Drive Signal Output Timing

## CHAPTER 3 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

$\qquad$3.1 OVERVIEW3-1
3.1.1 Precautions for Disassembling the Printer ..... 3-1
3.1.2 Tools ..... 3-1
3.1.3 Service Checks After Repair ..... 3-2
3.1.4 Specifications for Screws ..... 3-3
3.2 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY ..... 3.4
3.2.1 Changing the Printhead ..... 3-5
3.2.2 Removing the Printer Case ..... 3-6
3.2.2.1 Removing the Front Case. ..... 3-6
3.2.2.2 Removing the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER ..... 3-6
3.2.3 Removing the Circuit Boards ..... 3-7
3.2.3.1 'Removing the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN Board) ..... 3-7
3.2.3.2 Removing the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSB/PSE Board) ..... 3-8
3.2.3.3 Removing the BOARD ASSY.,PANEL (C062 PNL Board) ..... 3-8
3.2.4 Removing the PRINTER MECHANISM ..... 3-9
3.2.5 Disassembling the PRINTER MECHANISM ..... 3-10
3.2.5.1 Removing the Motor, CR ..... 3-10
3.2.5.2 Removing the Motor, PF ..... 3-11
3.2.5.3 Removing the CABLE, HEAD, FRONT(,REAR). ..... 3-11
3.2.5.4 Removing the Carriage ..... 3-12
3.2.5.5 Removing the PLATEN ..... 3-13
3.2.5.6 Removing and Disassembling the FLAME, MAIN, RIGHT ..... 3-14
3.2.5.7 Removing and Disassembling the PAPER GUIDE Assembly (Including the DETECTOR ASSY., RE- LEASE) ..... 3-15
3.2.5.8 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., HP ..... 3-17
3.2.5.9 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY.,PE, REAR ..... 3-17
3.2.5.10 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY.,PE, FRONT.. ..... 3-18
3.2.5.11 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PLATEN ..... 3-18
3.2.5.12 Disassembling the TRACTOR ASHY ..... 3-19
3.2.5.13 Arranging the Cables ..... 3-20

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 3-1. Flowchart for Disassembling the Printer ..... 3-4
Figure 3-2. Removing the Printer Cover and the Paper Eject Cover ..... 3-5
Figure 3-3. Removing the Printhead ..... 3-5
Figure 3-4. Removing the HOUSING, FRONT ..... 3-6
Figure 3-5. Removing the Cover for the Optional Interface Card ..... 3 .6
Figure 3-6. Removing the SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD ..... 3-7
Figure 3-7. Removing the BOARD ASSY., MAIN ..... 3-7
Figure 3-8. Removing the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY ..... 3-8
Figure 3-9. Removing the BOARD ASSY., PANEL ..... 3-9
Figure 3-10. Removing the PRINTER MECHANISM ..... 3-9
Figure 3-11. Removing the MOTOR, CR ..... 3-10
Figure 3-12. Removing the MOTOR, PA ..... 3-11
Figure 3-13. Removing the CABLE, HEAD, FRONT(,REAR) ..... 3-11
Figure 3-14. Removing the Carriage Unit. ..... 3-12
Figure 3-15. Removing the PLATEN ..... 3-13
Figure 3-16. LEVER, RELEASE Insertion Positioning ..... 3-14
Figure 3-17. Disassembling the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT ..... 3-14
Figure 3-18. Direction for Inserting the PLAIN WASHER ..... 3-15
Figure 3-19. Removing the PAPER GUIDE ..... 3-15
Figure 3-20. Removing the PAPER GUIDE ASSY., SUPPORT ..... 3-16
Figure 3-21. Removing the LEVER ASSY., PF ..... 3-16
Figure 3-22. How to Insert the SHAFT, RELEASE ..... 3-16
Figure 3-23. Removing the DERECTOR ASSY., HP ..... 3-17
Figure 3-24. Removing the DERECTOR ASSY.,PE, REAR. ..... 3-18
Figure 3-25. Removing the DERECTOR ASSY.,PE, FRONT ..... 3-18
Figure 3-26. Removing the DERECTOR ASSY., PLATEN ..... 3-19
Figure 3-27. Disassembling the TRACTOR ASSY ..... 3-19
Figure 3-28. Arranging the Cables ..... 3-20.
LIST OF TABLES
Table 3-1. List of Recommended Tools ..... 3-1
Table 3-2. Equipment Required for Maintenance ..... 3-1
Table 3-3. Inspection Checklist for Repaired Printer ..... 3-2
Table 3.4. Abbreviations Used for Screws ..... 3-3
Table 3-5. Types of Screws and Abbreviations ..... 3-3

### 3.1 OVERVIEW

This section describes the various points to note when disassembling and assembling the printer.

### 3.1.1 Precautions for Disassembling the Printer

Follow the precautions below when disassembling the printer.

## WARNING

Before disassembling, assembling, or adjusting the printer, disconnect the power supply cable from the external AC power socket. Failure to do so risks personal injury. The power supply switch for the printer is wired into the secondary circuitry. As a result, the printer still remains live with current flowing even when this switch is off.

## CAUTION

To maintain efficient printer operation, use only the recommended tools for maintenance work.
Use only the recommended lubricants and adhesives (see Chapter 6).
Adjust the printer only in the manner described in this manual.

### 3.1.2 Tools

Tables 3-1 and 3-2 list the various recommended tools that are needed when disassembling, assembling, or adjusting the printer. Use only tools that meet these specifications.

Table 3-1. List of Recommended Tools

| Tool | Part No. |
| :--- | :---: |
| Round-nose pliers | B740400 100 |
| Nippers | B740500100 |
| Tweezers | 6741000100 |
| Soldering iron | B740200 100 |
| E-ring holder \# 2.5 | B740800400 |
| E-ring holder \# 5 | B740800700 |
| E-ring holder \# 6 | 6743800800 |
| Phillips screwdriver No. 2 | 6743000100 |
| Normal screwdriver | B74 1700200 |
| Box driver (7 mm across) | - |
| Thickness gauge (0.44 mm) | - |
| Thickness gauge (0.47 mm) |  |

## NOTE

All tools are commercially aveilable.

Table 3-2. Equipment Required for Maintenance

| Description | Specification |
| :--- | :--- |
| Multimeter <br> Oscilloscope | 20 MHz |

REV.-A

### 3.1.3 Service Checks After Repair

When printer components are to be sent back to the customer after servicing, first use the checklist shown in Table 3-3 to note the current state of the components. This checklist provides a record to make servicing and shipping more efficient.

Table 3-3. Inspection Checklist for Repaired Printer

| Category | Component | Item to Check | Is Check Required? |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Printer features | Printhead | Are any wires broken? | $\square$ Checked, Not necessary |
|  |  | Are any wires worn out? | Ohecked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  | Carriage mechanism | Does the carriage move smoothly? Movement noisy, $\square$ Mechanism dirty, Mechanism oily | $\square$ Checked, Not necessary |
|  |  | Is the carriage motor running at the correct temperature and not overheating? <br> Ohecked, $\square$ Not necessary | Ohecked, •! Not necessary |
|  | Paper advance mechanism | Is the paper advancing smoothly? <br> $\square$ Movement noisy, Mechanism dirty, <br> $\square$ Mechanism oily | Ohecked, •! Not necessary |
|  |  | Is the paper advance motor running at the correct temperature and not overheating? | $\square$ Checked, Not necessary |
|  | Paper path | Is the type of paper in the printer feeding smoothly? | $\square$ Checked, Not necessary |
|  |  | Is the tractor feeding the paper correctly? | $\square$ Checked, Not necessary |
|  |  | Is the paper path clear of all obstructions? | Ohecked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  |  | Is the platen free of damage? | Ohecked, - Not necessary |
|  | Ribbon mask | Is the ribbon mask free of distortion? | Ohecked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  | Self-print test | Was the self-print test successful? | Ohecked, •I Not necessary |
|  | On-line test | Was the on-line test successful? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
| tdjustment | Printhead | Is the platen gap adjusted correctly? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  | Printing | Is the bidirectional print position adjusted correctly? | Ohecked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  | DIP switch settings | Have DIP switches been reset to their factory shipment settings? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
| iystem ipgrade | ROM• version | The ROM version is XXX. | $\square$ Checked, Not necessary |
| ihipment | - | Has the ribbon been removed? | Qhecked, Not necessary |
|  |  | Have all relevant parts been included in the shipment? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |

### 3.1.4 Specifications for Screws

In the following sections, abbreviations are used for small parts, such as screws and washers. Tables 3-4 and 3-5 list these abbreviations.

Table 3-4. Abbreviations Used for Screws

| Abbreviation | Part Neme |
| :--- | :--- |
| CBS(C) | Cross-recessed Bind head Cone point S tight screw |
| CBB(C) | Cross-recessed Bind head Cone point B tight screw |
| CB | Cross-recessed Bind head screw |
| CBS(0) | Cross-recessed Bind head S tight with screw with Outside toothed lock washer |

Table 3-5. Types of Screws and Abbreviations
Top

REV.-A

### 3.2 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

This section describes the procedures for disassembling and assembling the main components of the printer. When the procedure for installing a component into the printer is simply the reverse of the procedure for removing the component, no description of how to install the component is given.

Any points of special concern when assembling or adjusting a component part are given after the description of the procedure. It is important to take note of these points.

## CAUTION

Before disassembling any part of the printer, note the warnings in Section 3.1.
Before disassembling any part of the printer, remove the paper and the ink ribbon.

Disassembly includes the following five procedures:

1. Removing the printhead
2. Removing the case
3. Removing the electrical circuits
4. Removing the printer mechanism
5. Disassembling the printer mechanism

Diagrams in the appendix show how the components fit together. Refer to them as necessary.


Figure 3-1. Flowchart for Disassembling the Printer

### 3.2.1 Changing the Printhead

1. Remove the FRAME ASSY., SHEET GUIDE.
2. Remove the COVER ASSY., EJECT.


Figure 3-2. Removing the FRAME ASSY., SHEET GUIDE and the COVER ASSY., EJECT
3. Release the two levers that hold the printhead to the carriage. Lift out the printhead.
4. Remove the two FFCS (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT(,REAR)) from the printhead.


Figure 3-3. Removing the Printhead

REV.-B

### 3.2.2 Removing the Printer Case

This section describes how to remove the front case and HOUSING ASSY., UPPER.

### 3.2.2.1 Removing the HOUING, FRONT

1. Remove the COVER ASSY., PRINTER, FRONT.
2. Remove the HOUSING, FRONT.
3. Use a screwdriver to release the clips that hold the front case to the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER. Open the HOUSING, FRONT. Remove connector CN 1 on the BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062 PNL). Remove the HOUSING, FRONT.


Figure 3-4. Removing the HOUSING, FRONT
3.2.2.2 Removing the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER

1. Remove the COVER ASSY., PRINTER, FRONT, the COVER ASSY., EJECT, the TRACTOR ASSY, and the KNOB.
2. Remove the two $\operatorname{CBS}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10)$ screws that hold the optional interface card cover. Remove the cover.


Figure 3-5. Removing the COVER, CONNECTOR, UPPER for the Optional Interface Card
3. Remove the HOUSING, FRONT (see Section 3.2.2. 1).
4. Remove the two $\operatorname{CBB}(C)(M 4 X 25)$ screws that hold the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER to the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER.
5. Depress the two clips that hold the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER to the FRAME ASSY., SHEET GUIDE. Remove the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER.

### 3.2.3 Removing the Circuit Boards

This section describes how to remove the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (CO62 MAIN board), the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (CO62PSB/PSE board) and the BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062 PNL board).
3.2.3.1 Removing the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN Board)

1. Remove the HOUSING ASSY.,UPPER (see Section 3.2.2.2).
2. Remove the $C B(M 3 X 6)$ screws that hold the HOLDING PLATE, FFC to the SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD. Remove the HOLDING PLATE, FFC.
3. Disconnect the FFC (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (, REAR)) removing the cables for the CN6 and CN7 connectors on the main board.
4. Remove the three $\operatorname{CBB}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 \mathrm{X} 10)$ screws that hold the SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD to the BOARD ASSY., MAIN. Remove the SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD.


Figure 3-6. Removing the SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD
5. Remove the CBB (M4X 10) screw that holds the SHIELD PLATE, RIGHT to the BOARD ASSY., MAIN. Remove the $\operatorname{CBB}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 4 \mathrm{X}$ 14) screw that holds it to the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER. Remove the SHIELD PLATE, RIGHT.
6. Remove the cables for the following BOARD ASSY., MAIN connectors: CN3 (brown 12-pin), CN4 (white 5-pin), CN5 (white 6-pin), CN8 (yellow 2-pin), CN9 (black 2-pin), CN 10 (blue 2-pin), CN 11 (white 2-pin), and CN 12 (red 2-pin).
7. Remove the three $C B B(C)(M 3 X 10)$ screws and $C B$ ( $M 3 X 8$ ) screws that hold the BOARD ASSY., MAIN to the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER. Remove the BOARD ASSY., MAIN.


Figure 3-7. Removing the BOARD ASSY., MAIN

REV.-B
Point to Note for Assembly and Adjustment
After replacing the BOARD ASSY., MAIN, you must adjust the bidirectional print position again to ensure bidirectional printing is correctly aligned (see Section 4.2).
3.2.3.2 Removing the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062PSB/PSE Board)

1. Remove the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER (see Section 3.2.2.2).
2. Remove the cable for connector CN 13 from the BOARD ASSY., MAIN,
3. Remove the cable for connector CN 1 from the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY.
4. Remove the four $C B B / C)(M 3 \times 10)$ screws and the $C B(M 3 \times 8)$ screws that hold the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY to the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER. Remove the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY.


Figure 3-8. Removing the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY

### 3.2.3.3 Removing the BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062 PNL Board)

1. Remove the HOUSING, FRONT (see Section 3.2.2.1).
2. Remove the $10 \mathrm{CBB}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10)$ screws that hold the BOARD ASSY.,PANELto the HOUSING, FRONT. Remove the BOARD ASSY., PANEL.


Figure 3-9. Removing the BOARD ASSY., PANEL

### 3.2.4 Removing the PRINTER MECHANISM

1. Remove the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER (see Section 3.2.2.2).
2. Remove the CB (M3X 6) screws that attach the HOLDING PLATE., FFC to the SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD. Remove the HOLDING PLATE,FFC.
3. Disconnect the 2 FFCs(CABLE, HEAD, FRONT(,REAR))from the CN6 and CN7 connectors on the BORAD ASSY., MAIN. Remove the cables for the following BOARD ASSY., MAIN connectors: CN3 (brown 12-pin), CN4 (white 5-pin), CN5 (white 6-pin), CN8 (yellow 2-pin), CN9 (black 2-pin), CN1O (blue 2-pin), CN 11 (white 2-pin) and CN12 (red 2-pin).
4. Remove the $C B B(C)(M 4 X 10)$ screw that holds the SHIELD PLATE., RIGHT to the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (see Figure 3-6). Remove the $C B B(C)(M 4 \times 14)$ screws that hold it to the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER. Remove the SHIELD PLATE., RIGHT.
5. Remove the three $\operatorname{CBB}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 4 \times 14)$ screws that hold the PRINTER MECHANISM to the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM.


Figure 3-10. Removing the PRINTER MECHANISM

Point to Note for. Assembly and Adjustment
After replacing the PRINTER MECHANISM, you must adjust the bidirectional print position to ensure bidirectional printing is correctly aligned (see Section 4.2).

### 3.2.5 Disassembling the PRINTER MECHANISM

This section describes how to disassemble the main components of the PRINTER MECHANISM.

### 3.2.5.1 Removing the MOTOR, CR

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the printer spring ( 778 gm ) from the base frame and the MOTOR, CR frame.
3. Remove the TIMING BELT from the BELT PULLEY.
4. Remove the MOTOR, CR frame from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER.
5. Remove the two $\operatorname{CBS}(0)(M 3 \times 6)$ screws that hold the MOTOR, CR to the FRAME ASSY., CR, MOTOR. Remove the MOTOR, CR .


Figure 3-11. Removing the MOTOR, CR

Points to Note for Assembly and Adjustment
See Section 3.2.5.13 for details on arranging and positioning the motor cable.
After removing the MOTOR, CR from the FRAME ASSY., CR, MOTOR, you must adjust the MOTOR, CR backlash (see Section 4.1. 1). You also must adjust the bidirectional print position to ensure bidirectional printing is correctly aligned (see Section 4.2).
3.2.5.2 Removing the MOTOR, PF

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER(see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the COMPRESSION SPRING, 200 that holds the platen shaft.
3. Release the two clips holding the MOTOR, PF to the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT.
4. Remove the MOTOR, PF from the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT.


Figure 3-12. Removing the MOTOR, PF
Point to Note for Assembly
See Section 3.2.5.13 for details on arranging and positioning the motor cable.
3.2.5.3 Removing the FFC (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT(,REAR))

1. Remove the printhead (see Section 3.2. 1).
2. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
3. Remove the FFC from the clips that hold it along the rear side of the PRINTER MECHANISM. Make sure that the FFC is free.
4. Remove the FFC from clip on the HOLDING PLATE, FFC at the rear of the PRINTER MECHANISM.
5. Remove the four clips that hold the HOLDING PLATE, FFC to the base frame. Remove the FFC together with the HOLDING PLATE, FFC.


Figure 3-13. Removing the FFC Cable
Point to Note for Assembly
See Section 3.2.5.13 for details on arranging and positioning the FFC.

## REV.-B

### 3.2.5.4 Removing the Carriage

1. Remove the FFC (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT(,REAR)) (see Section 3.2.5.3).
2. Remove the TIMING BELT from the carriage.
3. Use the box driver to rotate and free the adjusting bushing. This bushing holds the SHAFT, CR, GUIDE to the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT. Remove the bushing.
4. Remove the carriage unit together with the SHAFT, CR, GUIDE by pulling the SHAFT, CR, GUIDE a little to the right.


Figure 3-14. Removing the Carriage Unit

## Point to Note for Assembly and Adjustment

After removing or rotating the adjusting bushing, you must adjust the platen gap (see Section 4.1.2).

### 3.2.5.5 Removing the PLATEN

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the two $\operatorname{CBP}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 X 10)$ screws that hold the COVER, PLATEN, LOWER to the left and FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT. Remove the COVER, PLATEN, LOWER.
3. Remove the COMPRESSION SPRING, 200 that holds the platen shaft (see Section 3.2.5.2, step 2).
4. Set the head LEVER, G, ADJUST to the most forward position.
5. Remove the two clips that hold the LEVER, RELEASE to the platen shaft. Remove the LEVER, RELEASE from the platen shaft.
6. Rotate the bushing by using the tweezers that holds the platen to the FRAME, MAIN, LEFT. Remove this BUSHING, 8 with the GROUND SPRING.
7. Rotate the BUSHING, 8 by using the tweezers that holds the platen to the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT. Remove the PLATEN by lifting it up toward the right.


Figure 3-15. Removing the PLATEN
Point to Note for Assembly
When inserting the LEVER, RELEASE onto the platen shaft, mesh the LEVER, RELEASE with the mechanism correctly by positioning it at the mark on the auxiliary release shaft.


Figure 3-16. LEVER, RELEASE Insertion Positioning

## REV.-B

### 3.2.5.6 Removing and Disassembling the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the PLATEN from the PRINTER MECHANISM (see Section 3.2.5.5).
3. Remove the MOTOR, CR from the FRAME, MAIN, BASE (see Section 3.2.5. 1).
4. Remove the two $\operatorname{CBS}(C)(P)(M 3 X 10)$ screws that hold the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT to the FRAME, MAIN, BASE. Remove the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT from the FRAME, MAIN, BASE.
5. Remove the following items from the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT in the specified order: MOTOR, PF (see Section 3.2.5.2), CAM, CLUTCH, TRACTOR, COMBINATION GEAR, 8.5,30, SPUR GEAR, PLAIN WASHER, COMPRESSION SPRING 200, and SPUR GEAR, 16.


Figure 3-17. Disassembling the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT

When installing the PLAIN WASHER, insert it from the front in the direction indicated by the mark.


Figure 3-18. Direction for Inserting the PLAIN WASHER
3.2.5.7 Removing and Disassembling the PAPER GUIDE (Including the DETECTOR ASSY., HP)

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the PLATEN from the PRINTER MECHANISM (see Section 3.2.5.5).
3. Remove the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT from the FRAME, MAIN, BASE (see Section 3.2.5.6).
4. Remove the three springs ( 32 gm ) from the lower side of the PRINTER MECHANISM . (These springs join the PAPER GUIDE support to the FRAME, MAIN, BASE.)
5. While holding open the clips that secure the PAPER GUIDE to the FRAME, MAIN, BASE, slide the PAPER GUIDE to the left. Remove the PAPER GUIDE.


Figure 3-19. Removing the PAPER GUIDE
6. Open the clips that hold the SPUR GEAR, 18 to the ROLLER ASSY., PF, DRIVE. Remove the SPUR GEAR, 18 from the ROLLER ASSY., PF, DRIVE.
7. Remove the ROLLER ASSY., PF, DRIVE from the PAPER GUIDE.
8. Slide the PAPER GUIDE support to the right. Remove the PAPER GUIDE support from the PAPER GUIDE.


Figure 3-20. Removing the PAPER GUIDE ASSY., SUPPORT

REV.-B
9. While holding down the three LEVER ASSY., PF, pull out and remove the SHAFT, RELEASE Remove the LEVER ASSY., PF and the COMPRESSION SPRING, 1300 from the PAPER GUIDE.
10. While holding open the clips that secure the DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE to the PAPER GUIDE, remove the DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE.


Figure 3-21. Removing the LEVER ASSY., PF

Point to Note for Assembly
Insert the SHAFT, RELEASE in the PAPER GUIDE in the way shown in the diagram below.


Figure 3-22. How to Insert the SHAFT, RELEASE

### 3.2.5.8 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., HP

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3,2.4).

2, Remove the clips from the rear side of the FRAME, MAIN, BASE that hold the DETECTOR ASSY., HP. Remove the DETECTOR ASSY., HP from the rear of the FRAME, MAIN, BASE.


Figure 3-23. Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., HP
3.2.5.9 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, REAR

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the two $\operatorname{CBP}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10)$ screws that hold the COVER, PLATEN, LOWER to the frame. Remove the COVER, PLATEN, LOWER.
3. Remove the clips that hold the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, REAR in the PAPER GUIDE. Remove the DETECTOR ASSY.,PE, REAR .


Figure 3-24. Removing the DETECTOR ASSY.,PE, REAR

### 3.2.5.10 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY.,PE, FRONT

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Open the clips that hold the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, FRONT to the FRAME, MAIN, BASE. Remove the DETECTOR ASSY.,PE, FRONT.


Figure 3-25. Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, FRONT
3.2.5.11 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PLATEN

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the clips that hold DETECTOR ASSY., PLATEN to the FRAME, MAIN, LEFT. Remove the DETECTOR ASSY., PLATEN.


Figure 3-26. Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PLATEN
3.2.5.12 Disassembling the TRACTOR ASSY.

1. Remove the TRACTOR ASSY. from the printer.
2. Remove the SPUR GEAR, 17 from the SHAFT, TRACTOR.
3. Remove the FRAME, TRACTOR, RIGHT from the SHAFT, TRACTOR and the SHAFT, TRACTOR, GUIDE.
4. Remove RETAINING RING from the SHAFT, TRACTOR.
5. Remove the TRACTOR ASSEMBLY (RIGHT), the PAPER SUPPORT unit, and the TRACTOR ASSEMBLY [LEFT) from the SHAFT, TRACTOR and SHAFT, TRACTOR, GUIDE.


Figure 3-27. Disassembling the TRACTOR ASSY.

REV.-B

### 3.2.5.13 Arranging the Cables

| Figure 3-28 shows how the cables are arranged for the PRINTER MECHANISM. When assembling the printer, make sure that the cables are laid out as shown in this figure.

(*This is an 80-column printer.)
Figure 3-28. Arranging the Cables

## CHAPTER 4 ADJUSTMENTS

4.1 ADJUSTING THE PRINTER MECHANISM ..... 4-1
4.1.1 MOTOR, CR Backlash Adjustment ..... 4-1
4.1.2 Platen Gap Adjustment ..... 4-2
4.2 BIDIRECTIONAL PRINT POSITION ADJUSTMENT ..... 4-4
4.2.1 Overview of Bidirectional Print Position Adjustment ..... 4-4
4.2.2 Bidirectional Print Position Adjustment Procedure ..... 4-4
4.3 CIRCUIT ADJUSTMENT ..... 4-6
4.3.1 Adjustment Process ..... 4-6.
LIST OF FIGURES
Figure 4-1. MOTOR, CR Backlash Adjustment ..... 4-2
Figure 4-2. Removing the RIBBON MASK ..... 4-2
Figure 4-3. The Adjusting Bushing .....  A $=3$
Figure 4-4. Platen Gap ..... 4-3

### 4.1 ADJUSTING THE PRINTER MECHANISM

This section describes the various adjustments you may need to make to the PRINTER MECHANISM.

### 4.1.1 MOTOR, CR Backlash Adjustment

In the MOTOR, CR backlash adjustment, the pinion gear of the MOTOR, CR is meshed smoothly with the BELT PULLEY cog. If the pinion gear is poorly aligned, printer operation becomes noisy, and the accuracy of character alignment during printing suffers.

1. Remove the MOTOR, CR, along with the FRAME ASSY., CR, MOTOR, from the PRINTER MECHANISM (see Section 3.2.5.1).
2. Loosen the two CBS(0) (M3X 6) screws that hold the MOTOR, CR to the FRAME ASSY., CR, MOTOR.
3. Check the alignment of the MOTOR, CR pinion gear with the BELT PULLEY cog. Move the MOTOR, CR until you judge that there is a gap of about $0.05-0.15 \mathrm{~mm}$ between the two. Tighten the two CBS(0) (M3 X 6) screws.


Figure 4-1. MOTOR, CR Backlash Adjustment

REV.-B

### 4.1.2 Platen Gap Adjustment

If you have rotated or reassembled the SHAFT, CR, GUIDE or the adjusting bushing, or if printing is abnormal, you must adjust the gap between the PLATEN and the printhead.

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the printhead from the carriage (see Section 3.2. 1).
3. Use tweezers to remove the RIBBON MASK from the carriage.



Figure 4-2. Removing the RIBBON MASK
4. Remount the printhead on the carriage.
5. Set the paper-thickness LEVER, G, ADJUST to position $O$ (the second step position).
6. Move the LEVER, RELEASE back to the friction setting.
7. Move the carriage until the edge of the printhead is at the 5 th column print position.
8. Use the box driver ( 7 mm ) to rotate the adjusting bushing on the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT of the PRINTER MECHANISM.


Figure 4-3. The Adjusting Bushing
9. Rotate the adjusting bushing until the platen gap is large enough for a thickness gauge of 0.44 mm thickness but too narrow for one of 0.47 mm thickness.


Figure 4-4. Platen Gap
10. Move the carriage until the edge of the printhead is at the 75 th column print position.
11. Use the box driver ( 7 mm ) to rotate the adjusting bushing on the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT of the PRINTER MECHANISM.
12. Rotate the adjusting bushing until the platen gap is large enough for a thickness gauge of 0.44 mm thickness but too narrow for one of 0.47 mm thickness.
13. Move the printhead back again so that the edge of the printhead is at the 5th column print position. Check the platen gap again with the thickness gauge. It should still be large enough for a thickness gauge of 0.44 mm thickness but too narrow for one of 0.47 mm thickness. If this is not the case, go back to step 8.
14. Center the carriage. Check the platen gap again with the thickness gauge. It should still be large enough for a thickness gauge of 0.44 mm thickness but too narrow for one of 0.47 mm thickness. If this is not the case, go back to step 8.
15. Remove the printhead, install the RIBBON MASK and then replace the printhead.

REV.-B

### 4.2 BIDIRECTIONAL PRINT POSITION ADJUSTMENT

This section describes how to adjust the bidirectional print position to ensure correct printing alignment.

### 4.2.1 Overview of Bidirectional Print Position Adjustment

This printer prints characters when the carriage is moving in either direction (i.e., from left to right or from right to left).

Adjustment is necessary to ensure that the printing of characters in one direction is properly aligned with the printing of characters in the opposite direction. For example, if the print position is out of alignment, printing of a vertical line shows staggering because of the skew effect.

It is important to readjust the bidirectional print position if anything has been done to the gear arrangement that might affect this printing alignment. By making the timing lag a fraction during printing while the carriage moves from right to the left, it is possible to line up the printing done in this direction so that it will match the printing done in the left to right direction. This procedure to alter the timing is called bidirectional print position adjustment.

The degree of bidirectional printing skew differs, depending on the unique characteristics of each | PRINTER MECHANISM. For this reason, there is no standard skew correction value that can be applied to each printer. The unique skew correction value for each printer has to be written to EEPROM on the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN BOARD).

Whenever the PRINTER MECHANISM, or the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (CO62 MAIN BOARD) itself, is changed during sevicing, the bidirectional print position must be readjusted and a new bidirectional skew correction value must be written to EEPROM.

### 4.2.2 Bidirectional Print Position Adjustment Procedure

Initial operation
Before performing the bidirectional alignment adjustment, complete the initial operation below:

* Position the LEVER, G, ADJUST at position O. * Verify that the DIP switch 1-6 is on).
* Verify that the DIP switch setting for country is U.S. (DIP switches 1-1, 1-2, 1-3 are on).
* Load paper.
.Feed at least 10 lines.
.Turn the printer off.

NOTE: The printer enters unidirectional printing mode automatically from the top of form to the line 10 position on the paper, because this improves paper-feed accuracy. Therefore, you must perform the bidirectional alignment adjustment after 10 lines or more have been fed.

## Adjustment operation

The alignment procedure is as follows:

1. Turn the printer power on while pressing the ALT, LF/FF, and LOAD EJECT buttons.
2. The printer enters draft mode and prints the reference value and "|" characters for 4 lines.

Are the characters aligned vertically? NO $\rightarrow$ GO TO STEP 3.

```
YES }->\mathrm{ GO TO STEP }4
```

3. Referring the odd-numbered lines (Ist and 3rd), adjust the even-numbered lines (2nd and 4th).
" If the even-numbered lines are shifted to the right:
$\rightarrow$ Press the LOAD/EJECT button once while pressing the ALT button. (The reference value increases +1 and even lines shift to the left.)
.If the even-numbered lines are shifted to the left:
$\rightarrow$ Press the LF/FF button once while pressing the ALT button. (The reference value decreases - 1 and even lines shift to the right.)
4. Press the $A L T, L F / F F$, and LOAD/EJECT buttons at the same time.
5. The printer enters LQ mode, and the printer prints the reference value and the " $\mid$ " characters for 4 lines.

Are the characters aligned vertically?

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { NO } \rightarrow \text { GO TO STEP } 6 . \\
& \text { YES } \rightarrow \text { GO TO STEP } 7 .
\end{aligned}
$$

6. Referring to the odd-numbered lines (1st and 3rd), adjust the even-numbered lines (2nd and 4th).
-If the even-numbered lines are shifted to the right:
$\rightarrow$ Press the LOAD/EJECT button once while pressing the ALT button. (The reference value increases + 1 and even lines shift to the left.)
.If the even-numbered lines are shifted to the left:
$\rightarrow$ Press the LF/FF button once while pressing the ALT button. (The reference value decreases - 1 and even lines shift to the right.)
7. Turn printer power off.

REV.-B

### 4.3 CIRCUIT ADJUSTMENT

| The BOARD ASSY., MAIN (CO62 MAIN BOARD) contains variable resistor VR1, which is used for balancing the circuitry. When any of the following parts are replaced, the circuitry must be balanced again by adjusting this variable resistance:

## R14, RI 5, R13, C8, and VR 1

If the circuitry is not correctly balanced in this way, the CPU A\D converter fails to function normally and printer operation is affected.

### 4.3.1 Adjustment Process

Attach a digital multimeter to the check terminal TP2 (Vref voltage) on the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN BOARD). Turn on printer power and turn variable resistor VR1 until a reading of 4.741 V is obtained.

## CHAPTER 5 <br> TROUBLESHOOTING

5.1 OVERVIEW ..... 5-1
5.2 REPAIR BY UNIT REPLACEMENT ..... 5-2
5.3 REPAIR OF THE BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN BOARD) ..... 5-14
5.4 REPAIR OF THE PRINTER MECHANISM ..... 5-17
LIST OF FIGURES
Figure 5-1. Troubleshooting Procedure ..... 5-1
Figure 5-2. Printhead Resistance ..... 5-8
LIST OF TABLES
Table 5-1. Motor and Printhead Coil Resistance ..... 5-1
Table 5-2. Error Codes ..... 5-1
Table 5-3. Symptoms and Reference Pages ..... 5-2
Table 5-4. Repair of a Problem in the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN BOARD) ..... 5-14
Table 5-5. Repair of the PRINTER MECHANISM ..... 5-17

### 5.1 OVERVIEW

Problems in the printer may exhibit a variety of symptoms, which can complicate the task of troubleshooting, unless you follow the procedure shown in the flowchart below.


Figure 5-1. Troubleshooting Procedure

The following tables provide troubleshooting information.

Table 5-1. Motor and Printhead Coil Resistance

| Part | Specifications |
| :--- | :--- |
| MOTOR, CR | Coil resistance 19.5 ohms $+/-7 \%$ at 25 degrees $C$ (77 degrees $F$ ) |
| MOTOR, PF | Coil resistance $79.0+/-5$ ohms at 25 degrees $C$ (77 degrees F) |
| Printhead | Coil resistance 45.5 $+/-3.2$ ohms 'at 25 degrees C (77 degrees F) |

Table 5-2. Error Codes

| Error Display | Error | Cause |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Buzzer beeps 3 times for 0.1 second, with 0.1 -second intervals. | Paper-out error | - Printer is out of paper. <br> DETECTOR ASSY., PE, FRONT (, REAR) |
| Buzzer beeps 5 times for 0.5 second, with 0.5 -second intervals. | Carriage error | MOTOR, CR malfunction. Carriage mechanism malfunction. .MOTOR, CR driver current malfunction. |

REV.-B

### 5.2 REPAIR BY UNIT REPLACEMENT

For most problems, it is sufficient for you to determine the difficulty to the unit level. Refer to Table 5-3, identify what the problem is, then perform the checks according to the corresponding flowchart.

Table 5-3. Sỵmptoms and Reference Pages

| Symptom | Problem | See Page |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Printer fails to operate when <br> power is on. | •Carriage does not move. <br> - Control panel indicator lamp does not light. | $5-3$ |
| Carriage operation is abnor- <br> real. | . Carriage moves away from home position at power <br> on. <br> -The carriage returns to the home position correctly, <br> but the printer then fails to enter the READY mode. | $5-4$ |
| Printing is faulty during self- <br> test, but carriage operation is <br> normal. | . No printing at all. |  |
| - Faulty printing - some of the dots are not printed. | $5-5$ |  |
| Control panel operation is <br> abnormal. | - When the LF switch is activated, no paper is fed. <br> tions between lines. | $5-12$ |
| Printing of data sent by the <br> host computer is faulty. | - Carriage operates normally at power on, and self-test <br> is executed correctly. <br> •Print data from the computer, however, is not printed <br> correctly. | $5-13$ |

The repair procedure flowcharts are represented using the following symbols:


## (1) Printer Fails to Operate when Power is On


(2) Carriage Operation is Abnormal


## (3) Printing is Faulty During Self-Test, but Carriage Operation is Normal







<Terminal Assignment )

Figure 5-2. Printhead Resistance
(4) Paper Feeding is Abnormal (but Printing is Normal)



NOTE: Perform bidirectional print alignment adjustment.


REV.-B
(5) Control Panel Operation is Abnormal

(6) Printing of Data Sent by the Host Computer is Faulty

NOTE: It is assumed here that the host computer is operating normally.


REV.-B

### 5.3 REPAIR OF THE MAIN BOARD

This section provides instructions for repairing the BOARD ASSY., MAIN when it is defective and describes various symptoms, likely causes, and checkpoints. Checkpoints refer to proper waveforms, resistance values, and other values to be checked to evaluate the operation of any component that might be bad. Check these values and take the appropriate action.

Table 5-4. Repair of a Problem in the BOARD ASSY., MAIN


Table 5-4. Repair of a Problem in the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (Cont.)


REV.-B
Table 5-4. Repair of a Problem in the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (Cont.)


### 5.4 REPAIR OF THE PRINTER MECHANISM

For detailed procedures for replacing or adjusting parts, refer to Chapter 3, Disassembly and Assembly, and Chapter 4, Adjustment. If a problem or symptom recurs following an attempted repair, refer to Table 5-5 to try to find other potential causes.

Table 5-5. Repair of the PRINTER MECHANISM

| Problem | Symptom | Cause | Checkpoint | Solution |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| The MOTOR, CR fails to operate. | The MOTOR, CR completely fails to activate at power on. | Foreign substances are lodged in the gears or elsewhere in the mechanism. | Manually move the TIMING BELT to see if this causes the motor to rotate. | Remove any foreign substances. |
|  |  | The MOTOR, CR is defective. | Measure the coil resistance of the motor. The resistance should be about 19.5 ohms. | Replace the MOTOR, CR. |
| The carriage does not operate norreally at power on [after the carriage has been manually zentered prior to power on). | The MOTOR, CR rotates, but the carriage does not move. | The BELT PULLEY is defective. | Check for broken or worn pulley. | Replace the BELT PULLEY. |
|  |  | The TIMING BELT is defective. | Check that the TIMING BELT is correctly inserted into the bottom of the carriage. | Reinsert the TIMING BELT. |
|  |  |  | Check for a broken timing belt. | Replace the timing belt. |
|  | The carriage moves left slightly, then stops. | Carriage movement is not smooth. | Check whether the carriage moves smoothly when moved manually. | Clean and lubricate. Replace the MO. TOR, CR. |
|  | The carriage moves to the left or right end, then stops. | The DETECTOR ASSY., HP is defective. | Use a multimeter to check the DETECTOR ASSY., HP. | Replace the DETECTOR ASSY., HP. |
| jelf-test printing loes not execute. | The carriage moves, but no printing is performed. | The printhead FFC (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (, REAR) ) common wires are disconnected. | Check the common wires for the printhead FFC (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (, REAR) ). | Replace the FFC (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (, REAR) ). |

REV.-B

I

| Problem | Symptom | Cause | Checkpoint | Solution |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Self-test printing is abnormal. | A particular dot fails to print. | The printhead is defective. | Measure the coil resistance of the printhead. The normal value is approximately 45.5 ohms. | Replace the printhead. |
|  |  |  | Check whether the dot wire is worn. | Replace the printhead. |
|  | The printing is too light, or the print density is not uniform. | The printhead is defective. | Check whether the tip of the dot wire is worn. | Replace the printhead. |
|  |  | The platen gap is not properly adjusted. | Set the gap LEVER, G, ADJUST to the second position, and check the gap between the tip of the printhead and the PLATEN. <br> The appropriate value is 0.46 mm . | Adjust the gap. Refer to Section 4.1.2, Platen Gap Adjustment. |
| Paper feeding is abnormal. | Printing is performed, but the paper is not fed, or is not fed uniformly. | Foreign substances are lodged in the paper path. | Perform a visual check of the paper path. | Remove any foreign substance. <br> . Remove any foreign substance. <br> . Replace the pa-per-feed reduction gear. <br> -Replace the plat en gear. |
|  |  | The MOTOR, PF is not driving the gear correctly. | Check that no foreign substance is lodged between the gears, and that the gears are not broken or worn. |  |
|  |  | The MOTOR, PF is defective. | Measure the coil resistance for the MOTOR, PF. The approximate value should be 79 ohms. | Replace the MOTOR, PF. |

Table 5-5. Repair of the PRINTER MECHANISM (Cont.]

| Problem | Symptom | Cause | Checkpoint | Solution |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| The ribbon feed is abnormal. | The ribbon is not fed. | The ribbon cartridge is defective. | Dismount the ribbon cartridge, rotate its knob manually, and check whether the ribbon feeds normally. | Replace the ribbon cartridge. |
|  |  | Foreign substances are caught in the gears. | Check whether the ribbon driving gear rotates when the carriage is moved manually. | - Remove any foreign substance. <br> -Replace the rib-bon-feed mechanism. |
|  | The ribbon feeds properly only when the carriage moves in one direction (i.e., it fails to feed when the carriage moves in the other direction). | The planetary lever is defective. | Move the carriage manually, and check whether the planetary lever turns in reverse and engages the gear. | Replace the ribbon cartridge. |
| 'aper becomes itained. | Ink stains appear on areas where there is pinting. | The RIBBON MASK is not correctly positioned. | Check whether the RIBBON MASK is in the correct position. | Reinstall the RIBBON MASK. |
|  |  | The platen gap is not adjusted. | Set the gap adjust lever to the second position, and check the gap between the tip of the printhead and the PLATEN. <br> The appropriate value is 0.46 mm . | Adjust the gap. Refer to Section 4.1.2, Platen Gap Adjustment. |
| rinting continues fter the paper nds or when no laper is loaded. | Printing continues past the paper end. | The DETECTOR ASSY.,PE, FRONT (, REAR) | Check the DETECTOR ASSY.,PE, FRONT (, REAR) | Replace the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, FRONT (, REAR) |

## CHAPTER 6 MAINTENANCE

6.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE ..... 6-1
6.2 LUBRICATION AND ADHESIVE APPLICATION ..... 6-1
LIST OF FIGURES
Figure 6-1. Correct Adhesive Application ..... 6-2
Figure 6.2.LQ-570 Lubrication Points ..... 6-3
Figure 6-3. LQ-1070 Lubrication Points ..... 6-4
LIST OF TABLES
Table 6-1. Lubricants and Adhesive ..... 6.1
Table 6-2. Lubrication Points ..... 6-2
Table 6-3. Adhesive Application Point ..... 6-2

### 6.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

Preventive maintenance includes regular cleaning of the case exterior (using denatured alcohol), as well as occasional vacuuming of the mechanism's interior to remove dust and paper debris. After cleaning the unit, check that it is adequately lubricated (as described in Section 6.2, below). Before returning the printer to the customer, inspect the springs, paper-feed rollers, and basic operation.

## CAUTION

Disconnect the printer from the external AC power source before performing maintenance. Do not use thinner, trichloroethylene, or ketone-based solvents on the plastic components of the printer.

### 6.2 LUBRICATION AND ADHESIVE APPLICATION

EPSON recommends that the printer be lubricated at the points illustrated in Figure 6-2. Table 6-2 lists each point together with its recommended lubricant. The three recommended lubricants are EPSON $0-2, \mathrm{G}-20$, and G-26, all of which have been tested extensively and found to comply with the needs of this printer. (Table 6-1 provides details about these lubricants.) Before applying a lubricant, be sure that the surface to be lubricated is clean. Do not apply too much lubricant, as this may damage related parts.

Adhesive application is necessary at the point described in Table 6-3. Figure 6-1 indicates the point at which adhesive must be applied following disassembly or replacement. EPSON recommends that Neji lock \#2 (G) adhesive be applied to the point illustrated. Avoid overflow to adjacent parts.

Table 6-1. Lubricants and Adhesive

| Type | Name | Quantity | Availability | Part No. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: | :--- |
| Oil | 0-2 | 40 cc | E | B7 10200001 |
| Grease | G-20 | 40 gm | E | B702000001 |
| Grease | G-26 | 40 gm | E | B7026000001 |
| Adhesive | Neji lock \#2 (G) | 1000 gm | E | B730200200 |

E: EPSON-exclusive product

Table 6-2. Lubrication Points (Refer to Figure 6-2)

| Ref. No. | Lubrication Points | Lubricant |
| :---: | :--- | :---: |
| 1 | $1 / 4$ of the perimeter of the top edge of the gear ( $8.5 \mathrm{~mm}, 30 \mathrm{~mm}$ ) | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 2 | $1 / 3$ of the perimeter of the top edge of the gear (40 mm) | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 3 | $1 / 3$ of the perimeter of the top edge of the platen gear | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 4 | Portion of carriage that contacts base frame | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 5 | Oil pad | $\mathrm{o}-2$ |
| 6 | Portion of platen shaft that contacts ground spring | $\mathrm{G}-20$ |
| 7 | Gear (40 mm) shaft | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 8 | Gear (8.5, 30 mm) shaft | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 9 | Ribbon-feed gear shafts | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 10 | Gear (1 1.5 mm) shaft | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 11 | Portion of paper guide that contacts gear (18 mm) | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 12 | Portion of paper guide that contacts sub paper guide | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 13 | Portion of release shaft that contacts paper guide | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 14 | Portion of paper tension roller shaft that contacts paper tension frame | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 15 | Portion of tractor shaft that contacts tractor frame (left) | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |
| 16 | Tractor clutch cam | $\mathrm{G}-26$ |

NOTE: Lubrication must be applied during the reassembly process.

Table 6-3. Adhesive Application Point (Refer to Figure 6-I.)

| Adhesive Application Point | No. of Points |
| :---: | :---: |
| Portion where timing belt engages the <br> carriage | 1 |



Figure 6-1. Correct Adhesive Application


Figure 6-2. LQ-570 Lubrication Points


Figure 6-3. LQ-1070 Lubrication Points

## APPENDIX

A. 1 CONNECTOR SUMMARY ..... A-1
A. 2 CIRCUIT DIAGRAMS .....  A-5
A. 3 CIRCUIT BOARD COMPONENT LAYOUT ..... A-1 2
A. 4 EXPLODED Diagram. ..... A. 16
A. 5 CASE OUTLINE DRAWING ..... A-20
LIST OF FIGURES
Figure A-1. Cable Connections ..... A. 1
Figure A-2. BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN BOARD) Circuit diagram (Annotated) .....  A-5
Figure A-3. BOARD ASSY., POWER SOPPLY (CO62 PSB BOARD) Circuit Diagram ..... A-6
Figure A-4. BOARD ASSY., POWER SOPPLY (C062 PSB BOARD) Circuit Diagram (Annotated) ..... A-7
Figure A-5. BOARD ASS., POWER SOPPLY (C062 PSB BOARD) Circuit Diagram .....  A-8
Figure A-6. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPLY (C062 PSE BOARD) Circuit Diagram (Annotated) ..... A-9
Figure A-7. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSE BOARD) Circuit Diagram ..... A-1 0
Figure A-8. BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062 PNL BOARD) Circuit Diagram ..... A-11
Figure A-9. BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062 MAIN BOARD) Component Layout ..... A-12
Figure A-1 O. BOARD ASSY., (C062 PSB BOARD) Component Layout ..... A-1 3
Figure A-1 1. BOARD ASSY., POWER (C062 PSE BOARD) Component Layout ..... A-1 4
Figure A-1 2. BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062
PNL BOARD) Component Layout ..... A-15
Figure A-1 3. LQ-570 Exploded Diagram ..... A-1 6
Figure A-14, LQ-1070 Exploded Diagram ..... A-1 7
Figure A-1 5. Model-5E10 Exploded Diagram ..... A-1 8
Figure A-1 6. Model-5E60 Exploded Diagram ..... A-1 9
Figure A-1 7. LQ-570 Case Outline Drawing ..... A-22
Figure A-18. LQ-1 070 Case Outline Drawing. ..... A-23

## LIST OF TABLES

Table A-1. Board Connector Summary ..... A-2
Table A-2. CN2 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-3
Table A-3. CN3 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN). ..... A. 3
Table A-4. CN4 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN). ..... A-3
Table A-5. CN5 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-3
Table A-6. CN6 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-3
Table A-7. CN7 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-8. CN8 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN). ..... A-4
Table A-9. CN9 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-1 O. CN10 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-1 1. CN11BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-1 2. CN12 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-1 3. CN13 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-14. Part No. Reference Table ..... A-20

## A. 1 CONNECTOR SUMMARY

Figure A-1 illustrates the interconnection of the primary components. Table A-1 summarizes the functions and sizes of the connectors.


Figure A-1. Cable Connections

REV.-B
Table A-1. Board Connector Summarv

| Board | Connector | Function | Pins |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN BOARD) | CN 1 <br> CN2 <br> CN3 <br> CN4 <br> CN5 <br> CN6 <br> CN7 <br> CN8 <br> CN9 <br> CN 10 <br> CN 11 <br> CN 12 <br> CN 13 | Parallel interface <br> Optional interface card <br> Control panel <br> MOTOR, CR <br> MOTOR, PF <br> Printhead <br> Printhead <br> DETECTOR ASSY., HP (HP sensor) <br> DETECTOR ASSY.,PE, REAR <br> DETECTOR ASSY.,PE, PRONT <br> DETECTOR ASSY., PLATEN <br> DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE <br> DC power input BOARD ASSY., (POWER SUPPLY): (C062PSB/PSE board) | $\begin{aligned} & 36 \\ & 36 \\ & 12 \\ & 5 \\ & 5 \\ & 17 \\ & 15 \\ & 2 \\ & 2 \\ & 2 \\ & 2 \\ & 2 \\ & 2 \end{aligned}$ |
| BOARD ASSY, POWER SUP. <br> PLY (C062PSB/PSE BOARD) | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{CN} 1 \\ & \mathrm{CN} 2 \end{aligned}$ | AC power input <br> DC power output (BOARD ASSY., MAIN): (CO62 MAIN board) | $\begin{aligned} & 2 \\ & 11 \end{aligned}$ |
| BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062 PNL BOARD) | CN 1 | BOARD ASSY., MAIN (CO62 MAIN board) | 12 |

Table A-2. CN2 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) Table A4. CN4 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | 1/0 | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | - | + 5 | +5 VDC |
| 2 | - | + 5 | +5 VDC |
| 3 | - | + 5 | +5 VDC |
| 4 | - | + 5 | +5 VDC |
| 5 | - | + 5 | +5 VDC |
| 6 | - | + 5 | +5 VDC |
| 7 | 0 | TXD | Transmit data |
| 8 | 0 | /READY | Ready to receive data |
| 9 | 1 | RXD | Receive data |
| 10 | - | NC | No connection |
| 11 | 0 | /RST | Reset |
| 12 | 0 | INH | Inhibit |
| 13 | 1 | /CMREQ | Command request |
| 14 | 1 | /WRRDY | Write ready |
| 15 | 1 | /RDREQ | Read request |
| 16 | 0 | / W R | Write |
| 17 | 0 | /RD | Read |
| 18 | 0 | /CS | Chip select |
| 19 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 20 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 21 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 22 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 23 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 24 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 25 | 0 | A 3 | Address bus bit 3 |
| 26 | 0 | A 2 | Address bus bit 2 |
| 27 | 0 | A I | Address bus bit 1 |
| 28 | 0 | AO | Address bus bit 0 |
| 29 | 1/0 | D7 | Data bus bit 7 |
| 30 | 1/0 | D6 | Data bus bit 6 |
| 31 | 1/0 | D5 | Data bus bit 5 |
| 32 | 1/0 | D4 | Data bus bit 4 |
| 33 | 1/0 | D3 | Data bus bit 3 |
| 34 | 1/0 | D 2 | Data bus bit 2 |
| 35 | 1/0 | D 1 | Data bus bit 1 |
| 36 | 1/0 | DO | Data bus bit 0 |


| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 0 | CRA | MOTOR, CR phase A |
| 2 | 0 | CRB | MOTOR, CR phase B |
| 3 | 0 | CRC | MOTOR, CR phase C |
| 4 | 0 | CRD | MOTOR, CR phase D |
| 5 | 0 | CRCOM | MOTOR, CR common |

Table A-5. CN5 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) I

| No. | I/O | Signal Nama | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 0 | PFA | MOTOR, PF phase A |
| 2 | 0 | PFB | MOTOR, PF phase B |
| 3 | 0 | PFC | MOTOR, PF phase C |
| 4 | 0 | PFD | MOTOR, PF phase D |
| 5 | 0 | PFCOM | MOTOR, PF common |
| 6 | 0 | PFCOM | MOTOR, PF common |

Table A-6. CN6 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 0 | HD5 | Head data 5 |
| 2 | 0 | HDI | Head data 1 |
| 3 | 0 | HD 13 | Head data 13 |
| 4 | 0 | HD9 | Head data 9 |
| 5 | 0 | HD21 | Head data 21 |
| 6 | 0 | HD17 | Head data 17 |
| 7 | - | COM | Common |
| 8 | - | COM | Common |
| 9 | - | COM | Common |
| 10 | 0 | HD24 | Head data 24 |
| 11 | 0 | HD16 | Head data 16 |
| 12 | 0 | HD 12 | Head data 12 |
| 13 | 0 | HD8 | Head data 8 |
| 14 | 0 | HD20 | Head data 20 |
| 15 | 0 | HD4 | Head data 4 |
| 16 | I | TEMP2 | Head temperature |
| 17 | - | TEMP 1 | +VU |

Table A-3. CN3 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | I | /PAUSE | Pause switch |
| 2 | - | /READY | Fixed GND |
| 3 | 0 | TXS | Transmit signal (LED) |
| 4 | 0 | /LDLED | LED data latch |
| 5 | 0 | /CKS | Shift clock |
| 6 | 0 | LDSW | Load switch data |
| 7 | I | RXS | Receive data (switch) |
| 8 | - | +5 | +5 VDC |
| 9 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 10 | - | SHLD | Shield ground |
| 11 | I | POWER I | Power switch |
| 12 | - | POWER2 | Fixed GND |

REV.-B

1 Table A-7. CN7 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 0 | HD3 | Head data 3 |
| 2 | 0 | HD 11 | Head data 11 |
| 3 | 0 | HD2 | Head data 2 |
| 4 | 0 | HD 19 | Head data 19 |
| 5 | 0 | HD7 | Head data 7 |
| 6 | - | COM | Common |
| 7 | - | COM | Common |
| 8 | - | COM | Common |
| 9 | 0 | HD22 | Head data 22 |
| 10 | 0 | HD 15 | Head data 15 |
| 11 | 0 | HD 18 | Head data 18 |
| 12 | 0 | HD23 | Head data 23 |
| 13 | 0 | HD 10 | Head data 10 |
| 14 | 0 | HD14 | Head data 14 |
| 15 | 0 | HD6 | Head data 6 |

Table A-13. CN13 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 0 | Psc | Power switch signal |
| 2 | - | +5 | +5 VDC |
| 3 | - | +5 | +5 VDC |
| 4 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 5 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 6 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 7 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 8 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 9 | - | +35 | +35 VDC |
| 10 | - | +35 | +35 VDC |
| 11 | - | +35 | +35 VDC |

I Table A-8. CN8 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

|  | No. | I/O | Signal Name |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

I Table A-9. CN9 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 1 | PE2 | DETCTOR ASSY.,PE, REAR |
| 2 | - | GND | Signal ground |

I Table A.10. CN10 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | I | PE1 | DETECTOR ASSY.,PE,FRONT |
| 2 | - | GND | Signal ground |

I Table A-1 1. CN11 BOARD ASSY.,MAIN(C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal | Name |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | Function |  |
| 2 |  | GAP | DETECTOR ASSY., PLATEN |

I Table A-12. CN12 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

I | No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | I | LEVER | DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE |
| 2 | - | GND | Signal ground |



Figure A-4. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSB BOARD) Circuit Diagram (Annotated) I

REV.-B


Figure A-5. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSB Board) Circuit Diagram


Figure A-6. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSE BOARD) Circuit Diagram (Annotated) 1


Figure A-7. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSE Board) Circuit Diagram


C062


Figure A-8. BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062 PNL BOARD) Circuit Diagram

## A-3. CIRCUIT BOARD COMPONENT LAYOUT



Figure A-9. BOARD ASSY., MAIN (CO62 MAIN Board) Component Layout


Figure A-10. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSB BOARD) Component Layout


Figure A-1 1. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSE Board) Component Layout


Figure A-1 2. BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062 PNL BOARD) Component Layout

REV.-A

## A. 4 EXPLODED DIAGRAM



Figure A-1 3. LQ-570 Exploded Diagram


Figure A-16. Model-5E60 Exploded Diagram

REV.-A
TablaA-1A.Part Na Raferense Table

| Ref. No. | Description | Ref. No. | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 100 | HOUSING ASSY., LOWER | 507 | COMPRESSION SPRING, 200 |
| 101 | SHIELD PLATE, BOTTOM | 508 | PLAIN WASHER (M5 X 16) |
| 102 | HOLDING PLATE, FFC | 509 | SPUR GEAR, 40 |
| 103 | GROUNDING PLATE, I/F | 510 | FRAME, MAIN, LEFT |
| 104 | COVER ASSY., PRINTER FRONT | 511 | COMBINATION GEAR |
| 105 | FRAME ASSY., SHEET GUIDE | 512 | SPUR GEAR, 13.2 |
| 106 | HOUSING ASSY., UPPER | 513 | RATCHET, RD |
| 107 | PAPER GUIDE, FRONT | 514 | LEVER ASSY., RIBBON PLANET |
| 108 | KNOB | 515 | MOTOR, PF |
| 109 | HOUSING, FRONT | 520 | DETECTOR, HP |
| 110 | COVER, FRONT | 521 | FRAME ASSY., CR, MOTOR |
| 111 | EDGE GUIDE, FRONT | 522 | MOTOR, CR |
| 112 | RUBBER FOOT | 523 | BELT PULLEY |
| 113 | COVER, CONNECTOR, UPPER | 524 | COVER ASSY., E |
| 114 | GUIDE, I/F BOARD | 525 | BALL BEARING |
| 115 | SHEET, PANEL | 526 | C. B.S.(O) SCREW |
| 116 | KEY TOP, POWER SWITCH | 527 | RETAINING RING TYPE-E(2.3) |
| 117 | SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD | 529 | DETECTOR, RELEASE |
| 118 | COVER, DIP SWITCH | 530 | CARRIAGE ASSY. |
| 119 | GROUNDING PLATE | 531 | HEAD LOCK LEVER SPRING |
| 120 | SHIELD PLATE, RIGHT | 532 | HEAD LOCK LEVER (LEFT) |
| 121 | LOGO PLATE | 533 | HEAD LOCK LEVER (RIGHT) |
| 122 | C. B. B-TITE C. SCREW (M4 X 14) | 534 | GROUNDING PLATE, HEAD |
| 123 | C. B.(0) SCREW (M4×8) | 535 | DETECTOR, PE, REAR |
| 124 | HEXAGON NUT (M4) | 536 | DETECTOR, PE, FRONT |
| 125 | C. B. B(C). SCREW(M3×10) | 537 | DETECTOR, PLATEN |
| 126 | C. B. S-TITE C. SCREW (M3 $\times 10$ ) | 538 | PLATEN |
| 127 | C. B. $B(P)$. SCREW (M3 $\times 12$ ) | 539 | BUSHING, 8 |
| 128 | C. B. B(P). SCREW(M4 X 25) | 540 | SPUR GEAR, 34 |
| 129 | C. B.A-LAMITITE (M3 $\times 6$ ) | 541 | PLAIN WASHER 8X0.5 X 15 |
| 130 | C.B. SCREW (M3 $\times 6$ ) | 542 | LEAF SPRING 8.2X0. 15X 15 |
| 131 | SOUND ABSORBER | 543 | RETAINING RING TYPE-C |
|  |  | 544 | TRACTOR ASSY. |
| 300 | BOARD ASSY., MAIN | 545 | TRACTOR ASSEMBLY (LEFT) |
|  |  | 546 | TRACTOR ASSEMBLY (RIGHT) |
| 300 | BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY | 547 | FRAME, TRACTOR, LEFT |
| 301 | FUSE | 548 | FRAME, TRACTOR, RIGHT |
| 302 | C.B.S. SCREW (M3×8) | 549 | PAPER SUPPORT |
| 330 | WIRE HERNESS | 550 | TRACTOR GUIDE SHAFT |
|  |  | 551 | SHAFT, TRACTOR |
| 100 | POWER CABLE VD3 1303SA-1 OA | 552 | LEVER, TR, FRAME |
| 101 | POWER CABLE (BS3 1303SA-SR) | 553 | SPUR GEAR, 17 |
| 102 | POWER CABLE (AS3 1303S1) | 554 | COMPRESSION SPRING, 150 |
| 103 | POWER CABLE VDO0303SA-1 OA | 555 | RETAINING RING TYPE-E(6) |
| 110 | POWER CABLE ASSEMBLY | 556 | PAPER GUIDE |
| 111 | POWER CABLE ASSEMBLY | 557 | SHAFT, RELEASE |
| 112 | WIRE HERNESS | 558 | ROLLER ASSY., PF, DRIVE |
| 450 | BOARD ASSY., PANEL | 559 | LEVER ASSY., PF |
|  |  | 560 | PAPER GUIDE ASSY., SUPPORT |
| 500 | PRINTER MECHANISM M-5E10 | 561 | COMPRESSION SPRING, 1300 |
| 502 | FRAME, MAIN, BASE | 562 | SPUR GEAR, 11.5 |
| 503 | FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT | 563 | SPUR GEAR, 18 |
| 504 | CAM, CLUTCH, TRACTOR | 564 | COVER, EJ |
| ;05 | COMBINATION GEAR, 8.5, 30 | 565 | ROLLER ASSY., EJ |
| 506 | SPUR GEAR, 40 | 566 | COVER, PLATEN, UPPER |

Table A-14. Part No. Reference Table (Cont.)

| Ref. No, | Description | Ref. No, | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 567 | SPUR GEAR, 17 |  |  |
| 568 | PAPER TENSION SPRING |  |  |
| 569 | RETAINING RING TYPE-E(5) |  |  |
| 570 | SHAFT, CR, GUIDE |  |  |
| 571 | LEVER, G, ADJUST |  |  |
| 572 | PULLEY, DRIVEN |  |  |
| 573 | BELT PULLEY FLANGE |  |  |
| 574 | SHAFT, DRIVEN, PULLEY |  |  |
| 575 | PLAIN WASHER 3.2 XO. $5 \times 7$ |  |  |
| 576 | CABLE, HEAD, FRONT |  |  |
| 577 | CABLE, HEAD, REAR |  |  |
| 578 | GROUNDING PLATE, CR |  |  |
| 579 | RIBBON MASK |  |  |
| 580 | LEVER, RELEASE |  |  |
| 581 | SHAFT, RELEASE, SUPPORT |  |  |
| 582 | TIMING BELT |  |  |
| 583 | OIL PAD |  |  |
| 584 | BUSH, PARALLEL, ADJUST |  |  |
| 585 | HOLDER, HEAD CABLE |  |  |
| 586 | EXTENSION SPRING, 778 |  |  |
| 587 | EXTENSION SPRING, 32 |  |  |
| 589 | COVER, PLATEN, LOWER |  |  |
| 590 | COVER, RD |  |  |
| 591 | C. B. S-TITEC.(P2) SCREW (M3 X 10) |  |  |
| 592 | C. B. P-TITE C. SCREW (M3x 10) |  |  |

## A. 5 CASE OUTLINE DRAWING




Figure A-1 7. LQ-570 Case Outline Drawing


Figure A-1 8. LQ-1070 Case Outline Drawing

# EPSON <br> SEIKO EPSON CORPORATION <br> PRINTER DIVISION 

## EPSON OVERSEAS MARKETING LOCATIONS

EPSON AMERICA, INC. EPSON DEUTSCHLAND GmbH

20770 Madrona Avenue
Torrance CA 90503, U.S.A.
Phone: (2 13) 782-0770
Fax: (213) 782-5248

## EPSON DEUTSCHLAND GmbH

ZülpicherStraße 6, 4000 Dusseldorf 11
F.R. Germany

Phone: (02 1 1) 56030
Fax: (21 1) 504-7787
EPSON FRANCE S. A.
68 bis, rue Marjolin 92300,
Levallois-Perret, France
Phone: (1) 47-373333
Fax: (1) 47-371510

## EPSON UK LTD.

Campus 100, Maylands Ave, Hemel Hempstead, Hertfordshire, HP2 7EZ, U.K.
Phone: 0422-61144
Fax: 0422-227227

## EPSON AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.

17 Rodborough Road,
Frenchs Forest, NSW 2086, Australia
Phone: (02) 452-0666
Fax: (02) 975-1409

EPSON SINGAPORE PTE. LTD.
No. 1 Raffles Place \#26-00
Oub Centre, Singapore 0104
Phone: 5330477
Fax: 5338119

## EPSON HONG KONG LTD.

25/F, Harbour Centre,
25 Harbour Road, Wanchai, Hong Kong
Phone: 5-8314600
Fax: 5-725792

EPSON ELECTRONICS TRADING LTD.
(TAIWAN BRANCH)
10F, No. 287 Nanking E. Road Sec. 3, Taipei, Taiwan, R.O.C.
Phone: (02) 717-7360
Fax: 02-7129164

EPSON ITALIA S.p.A.
V. le F. lii Casiraghi, 427

20099 SESTO S. GIOVANNI MI, ITALY
Phone: 2-26233.1
Fax: 2-2440750

## EPSON IBERICAS.A.

Avda. De Roma, 18-26
08290-Cerdanyola del Valles
Barcelona, Spain
Phone: (3) 582.15.00
Fax: (3) 582.15.55

## SEIKO EPSON CORPORATION

(Hirooka Office)
80 Harashinden, Hirooka
Shiojiri-shi, Nagano-ken
399-07 Japan
Phone: (0263) 52-2552
Telex: 3342-214 (SEPSON J)

## EPSON



## Addendum

# The AP5000 is mechanically and electronically the same as the LQ-570. The AP5500 is mechanically and electronically the same as the LQ-1070. 

## All the information contained herein is equally applicable to both printers.

With the exception of a few parts, all parts for the ActionPrinter 5000/5500 are identical to those for the LQ-570/1070. Refer to the parts price list (PL-LQ57AP5) for a list of the unique parts for the Epson ActionPrinter 5000/5500.

## EPSON

Service Manual

## LQ-570/ 1070 ActionPrinter <br> 5000/5500

## 24-PIN DOT MATRIX PRINTERS



# LQ-570/1070 

## SERVICE MANUAL

## EPSON

## NOTICE

* All rights reserved. Reproduction of any part of this manual in any form whatsoever without SEIKO EPSON's express written permission is forbidden.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice
* All efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy of the contents of this manual. However, should any errors be detected, SEIKO EPSON would greatly appreciate being informed of them.
* The above notwithstanding SEIKO EPSON can assume no responsibility for any errors in this manual or the consequences thereof.
© Copyright 1991 by SEIKO EPSON CORPORATION Nagano, Japan


## PRECAUTIONS

Precautionary notations throughout the text are categorized relative to 1) personal injury, and 2) damage to equipment:

DANGER Signals a precaution which, if ignored, could result in serious or fatal personal injury. Great caution should be exercised in performing procedures preceded by a DANGER heading.
WARNING Signals a precaution which, if ignored, could result in damage to equipment.
The precautionary measures itemized below should always be observed when performing repair/maintenance procedures.

## DANGER

1. ALWAYS DISCONNECTTHE PRODUCT FROM BOTH THE POWER SOURCE AND THE HOST COMPUTER BEFORE PERFORMING ANY MAINTENANCE OR REPAIR PROCEDURE.
2. NO WORK SHOULD BE PERFORMED ON THE UNIT BY PERSONS UNFAMILIAR WITH BASIC SAFETY MEASURES AS DICTATED FOR ALL ELECTRONICS TECHNICIANS IN THEIR LINE OF WORK.
3. WHEN PERFORMING TESTING AS DICTATED WITHIN THIS MANUAL, DO NOT CONNECT THE UNIT TO A POWER SOURCE UNTIL INSTRUCTED TO DO SO. WHEN THE POWER SUPPLY CABLE MUST BE CONNECTED, USE EXTREME CAUTION IN WORKING ON POWER SUPPLY AND OTHER ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS.

## WARNING

1. REPAIRS ON EPSON PRODUCT SHOULD BE PERFORMED ONLY BY AN EPSON CERTIFIED REPAIR TECHNICIAN.
2. MAKE CERTAIN that the source voltage is the same as the rated VOLTAGE, LISTED ON THE SERIAL NUMBER/RATING PLATE. IF THE EPSON PRODUCT HAS A PRIMARY-AC RATING DIFFERENT FROM THE AVAILABLE POWER SOURCE, DO NOT CONNECT IT TO THE POWER SOURCE.
3. ALWAYS VERIFY THAT THE EPSON PRODUCT HAS BEEN DISCONNECTED FROM THE POWER SOURCE BEFORE REMOVING OR REPLACING PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARDS AND/OR INDIVIDUAL CHIPS.
4. IN ORDER TO PROTECT SENSITIVE $\mu \mathrm{P}$ CHIPS AND CIRCUITRY, USE STATIC DISCHARGE EQUIPMENT, SUCH AS ANTI-STATIC WRIST STRAPS, WHEN ACCESSING INTERNAL COMPONENTS.
5. REPLACE MALFUNCTIONING COMPONENTS ONLY WITH THOSE COMPONENTS RECOMMENDED BY THE MANUFACTURER; INTRODUCTION OF SECOND-SOURCE ICs OR OTHER NONAPPROVED COMPONENTS MAY DAMAGE THE PRODUCT AND VOID ANY APPLICABLE EPSON WARRANTY.

## PREFACE

This manual describes functions, theory of electrical and mechanical operations, maintenance, and repair of the LQ-570/1070.
The instructions and procedures included herein are intended for the experienced repair technician, and attention should be given to the precautions on the preceding page. The chapters are organized as follows:

Chapter 1 - Provides a general product overview, lists specifications, and illustrates the main components of the printer.

Chapter 2 - Describes the theory of printer operation.

Chapter 3 - Includes a step-by-step guide for product disassembly and assembly.

Chapter 4 - Includes a step-by-step guide for adjustment.

Chapter 5 - Provides Epson-approved techniques for troubleshooting.

Chapter 6 - Describes preventive maintenance techniques and lists lubricants and adhesives required to service the equipment.
. The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

## REVISION SHEET

| REVISON | DATE ISSUED | CHANGE DOCUMENT |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | June 20, 1991 | 1st issue |
| B | July 26, 1991 | Added information for the LQ-1070: $\begin{aligned} & \text { I-i, I-ii, I-I } \sim \text { I-8, I-10, I-I 1, I-24, I-26 } \sim \text { I-28 } \\ & 2-i, 2-i i, 2-I \sim 2-1 \quad 1,2-13 \sim 2-15,2-17,2-18 \\ & 3-i, 3-i i, 3-5 \sim 3-20 \\ & 4-i, 4-1 \sim 4-4,4-6 \\ & 5-i, 5-I \sim 5-5,5-9,5-11 \sim 5-19 \\ & 6-i, 6-1,6-4 \\ & \text { A-I, A-ii, A-I } \sim \text { A-15, A-17 } \sim \text { A-19, A-22, A-23 } \end{aligned}$ |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION CHAPTER 2. OPERATION PRINCIPLES CHAPTER 3. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY<br>CHAPTER 4. ADJUSTMENTS<br>CHAPTER 5. TROUBLESHOOTING<br>CHAPTER 6. MAINTENANCE APPENDIX

## CHAPTER 1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

1.1 FEATURES ..... 1-1
1.2 SPECIFICATIONS ..... 1-3
1.2.1 Hardware Specifications ..... 1-3
1.2.2 Firmware Specifications ..... 1-9
1.3 INTERFACE OVERVIEW ..... 1-14
1.3.1 Parallel Interface ..... 1-14
1.4 CONTROL PANEL ..... 1-16
1.5 DIP SWITCHES AND JUMPER SETTING ..... 1-18
1.5.1 DIP Switch Settings ..... 1-18
1.5.2 Jumper Setting ..... 1-19
1.6 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS ..... 1-20
1.6.1 Self-Test ..... 1-20
1.6.2 Hexadecimal Dump Function ..... 1-20
1.6.3 Paper-out Detection and Forms Override Function ..... 1-21
1.6.4 Error Conditions ..... 1-21
1.6.5 Buzzer Operation ..... 1-21
1.6.6 Printer Initialization ..... 1-21
1.6.7 Default Values ..... 1-22
1.6.8 Sheet Loading and Sheet Ejection ..... 1-22
1.6.9 Tear-off Function ..... 1-23
1.6.10 LEVER, G, ADJUST ..... 1-24
1.6.11 Printer Protection for Heavy-Duty Printing. ..... 1-25
1.7 MAIN COMPONENTS ..... 1-26
1.7.1 C062 MAIN Board (Main Control Circuit Board) ..... 1-26
1.7.2 C062 PNL Board (Control Panel Circuit Board). ..... 1-27
1.7.3 C062 PSB/PSE Board (Power Supply Circuit Board). ..... 1-27
1.7.4 Printer Mechanism (M-5E10/M-5E60) ..... 1-28
1.7.5 Housing ..... 1-28

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1-1. Exterior View of the LQ-570/1070 ..... 1-2
Figure 1-2. Pin Configuration ..... 1-3
Figure 1-3. Printable Area for Cut Sheets ..... 1-6
Figure 1-4. Printable Area for Continuous Sheets ..... 1-6
Figure 1-5. Character Matrix ..... 1-13
Figure 1-6. Data Transmission Timing ..... 1-14
Figure 1-7. Control Panel ..... 1-16
Figure 1-8. Self-Test Printout ..... 1-20
Figure 1-9. Hexadecimal Dump Function ..... 1-20
Figure 1-10. Lever Positions ..... 1-24
Figure 1-11. LQ-570/1070 Component Layout ..... 1-26
Figure 1-12. C062 MAIN Board ..... 1-26
Figure 1-13. C062 PNL Board ..... 1-27
Figure 1-14. C062 PSB/PSE Board ..... 1-27
Figure 1-15. Model-5E10/5E60 Printer Mechanism ..... 1-28
Figure 1-16. Housing ..... 1-28

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1-1. Interface Options ..... 1-1
Table 1-2. Optional Units ..... 1-2
Table 1-3. Specifications for Cut Sheets ..... 1-4
Table 1-4. Specifications for Cut Sheets
(Carbonless Duplicating Paper) ..... 1-5
Table 1-5. Specifications for Continuous Sheets. ..... 1-5
Table 1-6. Envelopes ..... 1-5
Table 1-7. Label Specifications ..... 1-5
Table 1-8. Printing (Text Mode) ..... 1-10
Table 1-9. Printing (Bit Image Mode). ..... $1 \cdot 11$
Table 1-10. Character Matrix and Character Size. ..... 1-12
Table 1-11. Connector Pin Assignments and Signal Functions ..... 1-14
Table 1-12. Settings for DIP Switch 1 (SW1) ..... 1-18
Table 1-13. Settings for DIP Switch 2 (SW2) ..... 1-18
Table 1-14. International Character Set Selection. ..... 1-19
Table 1-15. Page Length ..... 1-19
Table 1-1 6. Lever Positions. ..... 1-24

### 1.1 FEATURES

The LQ-570/1070 are small, light-weight, low-cost, printers with advanced paper handling that is compatible with the LQ-510/550/1010. The printer's main features are as follows:

- Use of ESC/P 2 control codes

Ability to print multi-point fonts
Ability to receive and print raster graphic images
Compatibility with the LQ/SQ series available on the market

- Printing speeds: 225 characters per second (cps) (high-speed draft, 10 characters per inch (cpi)) 252 cps (draft, 12 cpi$)$
210 cps (draft, 10 cpi$)$
84 cps (LQ, 12 cpi$)$
64 cps (LQ, 10 cpi$)$
- Optional interface card
- Clear, easy-to-read printing with standard EPSON fonts
- Multiple fonts resident in the printer

9 LQ fonts (Roman, Sans Serif, Courier, Prestige, Script, OCR-B, Script C, Orator, Orator-S)
1 draft font

- Control panel switch selection of fonts, condensed, and cut-sheet feeder (CSF) bin
- Optional tractor unit for push-pull tractor feed
- Flexible handling of continuous paper

Three ways to insert continuous paper (front/bottom/rear path)
Auto backout and auto loading (rear insertion)
Use of continuous paper without removing CSF
Attachment of standard tractor unit in either of two positions (push/pull)

- Easy handling of cut sheets with the optional cut-sheet feeder

Two ways to insert cut sheets (front/top)
Auto loading

The LQ-570/1070 are equipped with the standard EPSON 8-bit parallel interface. Various interface options ensure compatibility with a wide variety of computers. Table l-I lists the interface options,Table 1-2 lists the optional units available for the LQ-570/1070, and Figure I-I shows an exterior view of the LQ-570/1070.

Table I-I. Interface Options

| Model | Description |
| :--- | :--- |
| C823051 | Serial interface card (inch screw) |
| C823061 | Serial interface card (milli screw) |
| C823071 | 32KB serial interface card (inch screw) |
| C823081 | 32KB serial interface card (milli screw) |
| C823101 | 32KB parallel interface card |
| C823131 | 32KB IEEE-488 interface card |

Printing is not possible for the following baud rates : 1800, 200, 134.5, $110,75 \mathrm{bps}$.
NOTE: Refer to the "Optional Interface Technical Manual" for details.

Table 1-2. Optional Units

| Model | Description |
| :--- | :--- |
| c806371 | Single-bin cut-sheet feeder (80 column) |
| C806381 | High-capacity cut-sheet feeder (80 column) |
| C806391 | Singl-bin cut sheet feeder (136 column) |
| C806401 | High capacity cut sheet feeder (136 column) |
| $C 800191$ | Tractor unit (80 column) |
| $\mathbf{C 8 0 0 2 2 1}$ | Tractor unit (136 column) |
| 7753 | Fabric ribbon cartridge (80 column) |
| 7754 | Fabric ribbon cartridge (136 column) |
| 7768 | Film ribbon cartridge (80 column) |
| 7770 | Film ribbon cartridae (136 column) |


(LQ-570)

(LQ-1070)
Figure 1-1. Exterior View of the LQ-570/1070

### 1.2 SPECIFICATIONS

This section provides specifications for the LQ-570/1070 printer.

### 1.2.1 Hardware Specifications

Printing method
Pin configuration

| Feeding methods | Figure 1-2. Pin Configuration Friction feed (front/top) |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Push tractor feed (rear) |
|  | Pull tractor feed (front/bottom) |
|  | Push-pull tractor feed (with optional tractor) (rear) |
| Line spacing | $1 / 6$ inch, $1 / 8$, or programmable in units of $1 / 360$ inch |
| Paper insertion | Friction feed Front or rear side |
|  | Tractor feed Front, bottom, or rear side |
| Paper-feed speed | Friction without CSF 77.6 msec ( $1 / 6$-inch feed) |
|  | 2.2 inches per second (ips) (continuous) |
|  | Friction with CSF $\quad 77.6 \mathrm{msec}$ (1/6-inch feed) |
|  | 2.2 ips (continuous) |
|  | Tractor $\quad 77.6 \mathrm{msec}$ ( $1 / \mathrm{g}$-inch feed) |
|  | 2.2 ips (continuous) |

NOTE: The points below provide precautions for handling paper.

1. Friction feed (release lever in FRICTION POSITION).

- Paper must be loaded from the front or top entrance.
- Do not use continuous paper.
- Do not perform any reverse paper feeds within the top 8.5 mm (. 34 in .), bottom 22 mm (. 87 in .) (top entrance), or bottom 40.2 mm (1.6 in.) (front entrance) area.
- Do not perform reverse feeds greater than $1 / 6$ inch after a paper end has been detected.


## REV.-B

- Use the paper tension unit.
- Do not use multi-part cut-sheet forms, except with front insertion.
- Do not perform reverse feeds greater than $1 / 6$ inch when using envelopes.

2. Push tractor feed (release lever in REAR PUSH POSITION).

- Paper must be loaded from the rear entrance.
- Release the friction-feed mechanism.
- Multi-part forms must be spot pasted beyond the perforation between the tractor holes.
- Paper for multiple copies must be carbonless multi-part paper.
- Use the paper tension unit.
- Do not perform reverse feeds greater than 4/15 inch.
- Since accuracy of paper feed cannot be assured after the paper end has been detected, please do not perform reverse feeding after detection of a paper end.

3. Push-pull tractor feed (release lever in REAR PUSH POSITION).

- Paper must be loaded from the front, rear, or bottom entrance.
- Release the friction-feed mechanism.
- Remove the paper tension unit and attach the pull tractor unit.
- Ensure that there is no slack in the paper between the platen and the pull tractor.
- Precisely adjust the horizontal position of the pull tractor and push tractor sprockets.
- Paper for multiple copies must be spot pasted beyond the perforation between the tractor holes.
- Paper for copies must be a carbonless multi-part paper.
- Do not perform reverse feeds greater than 4/15 inch.
- Do not perform a reverse feed after the paper end has been detected.

4. Pull tractor feed (release lever in PULL POSITION).

- Paper must be loaded from the front or rear entrance.
- Release the friction-feed mechanism.
- Remove the paper tension unit and attach the pull tractor unit.
- Insert the paper from either front or bottom.
- Paper for multiple copies must be spot pasted beyond the perforation between the tractor holes.
- Paper for copies must be a carbonless multi-part paper.
- Do not perform reverse feeds.

Paper specifications See tables I-3, I-4, 1-5, I-6, and I-7

Table I-3. Specifications for Cut Sheets (One-Part Paper)

| Width | 148 mm to 257 ("420) $\mathrm{mm}(5.8 \mathrm{in}$. to $10.1(16.5) \mathrm{in}$.) (top insertion) |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | 182 mm to 257 (*364) $\mathrm{mm}(7.2$ in. to $10.1(16.5) \mathrm{in}$ ) (front insertion) |
| Length | $364 \mathrm{~mm}(14.3 \mathrm{in}),$. maximum |
| Thickness | 0.065 mm to $0.14 \mathrm{~mm}(0.0025 \mathrm{in}$. to 0.0055 in .) |
| Weight | 14 lb to $24 \mathrm{lb}\left(52.3 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right.$ to $\left.90 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)$ |
| Quality | Standard paper (photocopier paper, etc.) <br>  <br>  <br> Recycled paper (at normal temperatures) |

(* 136 column)

Table 1-4. Specifications for Cut Sheets (Carbonless Duplicating Paper)

| Width | 182 mm to 216 ('364) mm (7.2 in. to 8.5 ('l 4.3) in.) |
| :---: | :---: |
| Length | 257 mm to 297 mm (10.1 in. to 11.7 in .) |
| Thickness | 0.065 mm to 0.14 mm ( 0.0025 in . to 0.0055 in .)-single sheet 0.12 mm to 0.32 mm ( 0.0047 in . to 0.012 in .)- total |
| Weight | 17 lb to $24 \mathrm{lb}\left(52.3 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right.$ to $\left.90 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)$ - single sheet 12 lb to $15 \mathrm{lb}\left(40 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right.$ to $\left.58 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{*}\right)$ - each |
| Quality | Carbonless duplicating paper |
| Copies | 4 sheets (1 original and 3 copies) |

(*:136 column)
Table 1-5. Specifications for Continuous Paper

| Width | 101 mm to $254(406) \mathrm{mm}(4.0 \mathrm{in}$. to 10.0 ("16) in.) <br> Thickness <br> 0.065 mm to $0.10 \mathrm{~mm}(0.0025 \mathrm{in}$. to 0.0039 in.$)$-single sheet <br> 0.065 mm to $0.32 \mathrm{~mm}(0.0025 \mathrm{in}$. to 0.012 in$)-$ total |
| :--- | :--- |
| Weight | 14 lb to $22 \mathrm{lb}\left(52.3 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right.$ to $\left.82 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)-$ single sheet <br> 12 lb to $15 \mathrm{lb}\left(40 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right.$ to $\left.58 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{*}\right)-$ each |
| Quality | Standard paper or carbonless duplicating paper <br> Recycled paper (at normal temperatures) |
| Copies | 4 sheets (1 original and 3 copies) |

(*: 136 column)
Table I-6. Envelopes

| Size | No. $6=166 \mathrm{~mm}$ X 92 mm <br> No. $10=240 \mathrm{~mm}$ X 104 mm |
| :---: | :---: |
| Thickness | 0.16 mm to 0.52 mm ( 0.0063 in . to 0.0197 in .) <br> Differences in thickness within the printing area must be less than 0.25 mm ( 0.0098 in .) |
| Weight | 12 lb to $24 \mathrm{lb}\left(40 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right.$ to $\left.91 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)$ |
| Quality | Bond paper, standard paper, airmail |
| Copies | Not available |

NOTES: - Printing on envelopes is available only at normal temperatures and only using top insertion.

- Keep the longer side of the envelope horizontal during insertion.
- Place the left edge of a No. 6 envelope at the sheet guide setting mark.


## Table 1-7. Label Specifications

| Label size | $21 / 2 \mathrm{in} . \mathrm{X} 15 / 16 \mathrm{in}$. |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | $4 \mathrm{in} . \times 15 / 16 \mathrm{in}$. |
| $4 \mathrm{in} . \times 17 / 16 \mathrm{in}$. |  |
| Copies | Not available |
| Thickness | 0.07 mm to $0.09 \mathrm{~mm}(0.0028 \mathrm{in} to 0.0031 in.$.$) - base paper$ |
|  | 0.16 mm to $0.19 \mathrm{~mm}(0.0063 \mathrm{in}$. to 0.0075 in.$)-$ total |

NOTES: - Printing on labels is available only at normal temperatures.

- Labels must be of the fanfold type.
- Labels with pressure sensitive paper must be spot pasted beyond the perforation between the tractor holes. The total thickness must be less than or equal to 0.3 mm ( 0.0118 in .). Labels can be printed out only if the temperature is between 5 and 35 degrees $C$ ( 41 and . 95 degrees F) and humidity is between $10 \%$ and $80 \%$ RH.
- Examples of labels AVERY CONTINUOUS FORM LABELS


## AVERY MINI-LINE LABELS

- Labels must be used with the pull tractor (front or bottom).
- Do not perform reverse feeds.

REV.-B
Printable area
See figures 1-3, I-4, and I-5

(*: 136 column)
(80 column):
. 1) 3.0 mm ( 0.12 in .) or more when paper width is less than 229 mm ( 9 in .).
24 mm ( 0.9 in .)(top insertion)/26 mm ( 1.0 in .)(front insertion) or more when paper width is 229 mm ( 9.0 in .) to 257 mm (10.1 in.).
(136 column:)
3.0 mm ( 0.12 in .) or more when the width of paper is less than 392 mm ( 15.4 in .). 29 mm ( 1.14 in.) (top insertion) $/ 31 \mathrm{~mm}$ ( 1.22 in .) (front insertion) or more when the width of paper is 392 mm (15.4 in.) to 420 mm (16.4 in.).

- Paper-feed accuracy cannot be assured within 22 mm ( 0.87 in .) from the bottom edge of paper (top insertion)
Paper-feed accuracy cannot be assured within 40.2 mm ( 1.58 in .) from the bottom edge of paper (front insertion)
Paper-feed accuracy cannot be assured within 22 mm ( 0.87 in .) from the top edge of paper.

Figure 1-3. Printable Area for Cut Sheets


Figure 1-4. Printable Area for Continuous Sheets
(80 column):

* 1) 13 mm ( 0.51 in .) or more when a paper width of 101 mm ( 4 in .) to 241 mm ( 9.5 in .) is used. 24 mm ( 0.9 in .)(rear insertion)/ 26 mm ( 1.0 in .) (front/bottom insertion) or more when a paper width of 254 mm (10 in.) is used.
(136 column):
13 mm ( 0.51 in .) or more using a paper width of 101 to 401.3 mm ( 4 to 15.8 in .).
15 mm ( 0.6 in .) or more using a paper width of 381 to 406 mm ( 15 to 16 in .).
13 mm ( 0.51 in .) (rear insertion) / 17 mm ( 0.67 in .) (front/bottom insertion) or more using a paper width Of 406 mm ( 16 in. )

| Ink ribbon | Type \#7753 Black ribbon cartridge ( 80 column) <br> \#7768 Film ribbon cartridge (80 column) <br> \#7754 Black ribbon cartridge (136 column) <br> \#7770 Film ribbon cartridge (136 column) <br> Color Black <br> Life 2 million characters at 48 dots/character (black ribbon) <br> ( 80 column) 0.2 million characters at 48 dots/character (film ribbon) <br> ( 136 column) 0.3 million characters at 48 dots/character (film ribbon) <br> Dimensions of ribbon cartridge <br> Fabric Type: <br> ( 80 column): $293 \mathrm{~mm}(\mathrm{~W}) \times 34 \mathrm{~mm}(\mathrm{H}) \times 72 \mathrm{~mm}(\mathrm{D})$ <br> (136 column): $468.3 \mathrm{~mm}(\mathrm{~W}) \mathrm{X} 34 \mathrm{~mm}(\mathrm{H}) \times 72 \mathrm{~mm}(\mathrm{D})$ <br> Film Type: <br> ( 80 column): $293 \mathrm{~mm}(\mathrm{~W}) \times 34 \mathrm{~mm}(\mathrm{H}) \times 72 \mathrm{~mm}(\mathrm{D})$ <br> (136 column): $468.5 \mathrm{~mm}(\mathrm{~W}) \mathrm{X} 34 \mathrm{~mm}(\mathrm{H}) \mathrm{X} 72 \mathrm{~mm}(\mathrm{D})$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| Reliability | Mean cycles between failures (MCBF) 3 million lines (excluding printhead) Mean time between failures (MTBF) 4000 power on hours (POH) ( $25 \%$ duty) |
| Life of printhead | 200 million strokes (black ribbon) <br> 100 million strokes (film ribbon) |
| Safety approvals | Safety standards UL1950 with D3 (U.S. version) CSA22.2\#220 EN 60950 (TUV) (European version) Radio frequency interference (RFI) FCC class B (U.S. version) VDE087 1 (self-certification) (European version) |
| Electrical specifications | 120 V version Rated voltage 120 VAC <br>  Input voltage range 103.5 to 132 VAC <br>  Rated frequency 50 to 60 Hz <br>  Input frequency 49.5 to 60.5 Hz <br>  Rated current 2.0 A <br>  Power consumption Approx. 33 W (during a self- <br>  test in draft mode, 10 cpi)  <br>  Insulation resistance 10 megohms, minimum (at 500 <br>   VDC between AC line and <br>  chassis).  |
|  | $\begin{array}{ll}\text { Dielectric strength } & 1000 \text { VAC rms for } 1 \text { minute or } \\ & 1200 \text { VAC rms for } 1 \text { second (be- } \\ & \text { tween AC line and chassis). }\end{array}$ |

REV.-B

| 220 to 240 V version | Rated voltage Input voltage range Rated frequency Input frequency Rated current Power consumption <br> Insulation resistance <br> Dielectric strength | 220 to 240 VAC <br> 198 to 264 VAC <br> 50 to 60 Hz <br> 49.5 to 60.5 Hz <br> 1.0 A <br> Approx. 33 W (during a self-test in draft mode, 10 cpi ) 10 megohms, minimum (at 500 VDC between AC line and chassis). 1250 VAC rms 1 minute or 1500 VAC rms 1 second (between AC line and chassis) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Temperature | 5 to 35 degrees C -30 to 60 degrees | 41 to 95 degrees F)-operating (-22 to 140 degrees $F$ ) <br> - in shipment container |
| Humidity | 10 to 80 \% RH -op 5 to 85 \% RH -stora | rating <br> ge |
| Resistance to shock 1 G , within 1 ms - operating 2 G , within 1 ms - storage |  |  |
| Resistance to vibration (80 column): | $0.25 \mathrm{G}, 55 \mathrm{~Hz}$, max. <br> $0.50 \mathrm{G}, 55 \mathrm{~Hz}$, max. | -operating -storage |
| Weight 6.1 kg , approx. (13.5 pounds, approx.) |  |  |
| Dimensions 434 mm (width) $\times 368 \mathrm{~mm}$ (depth) X 151 mm (height) 17.4 in. (width) X 14.7 in. (depth) X 6 in. (height) |  |  |
| (136 column): |  |  |
| Weight 8.4 kg , approx. (18.6 pounds approx.) |  |  |
| Dimension $\begin{array}{ll}609 \mathrm{~mm} \\ & 24.4 \mathrm{in}\end{array}$ | m (width) X 368 mm <br> in. (width X 14.7 (depth) | (depth)X 151 mm (height) <br> ) X 6 in. (height) |

### 1.2.2 Firmware Specifications

| Control code | ESC/P ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ level ESC/P 2 <br> (EPSON standard code for printers) |
| :---: | :---: |
| Printing direction | Bidirectional with logic seeking |
| Input data buffer | 8 KB (when SW I 7 7 is OFF) |
|  | OKB (when SW I-7 is ON) |
| Character code | 8 bits |
| Character tables | Italic character table, PC 437, PC 850, PC 860, PC 863, PC 865 ( PC indicates character table for personal computer) |
| Fonts and pitches |  |
| Bit-map fonts | EPSON Roman 10, 12, 15, proportional |
|  | EPSON Sans Serif 10, 12, 15, proportional |
|  | EPSON Courier 10, 12, 15 |
|  | EPSON Prestige 10, 12 |
|  | EPSON Script 10, 12 |
|  | EPSON Script C proportional |
|  | OCR-B 10 |
|  | EPSON Orator 10 |
|  | EPSON Orator-S 10 |
|  | EPSON Draft 10, 12, 15 |
| Scalable fonts | EPSON Roman 8 pt to 32 pt |
|  | EPSON Sans Serif 8 pt to 32 pt |
| Printing modes | Selection and mixture of the following modes are allowed, excluding 15 cpi condensed mode: |
|  | 0 Print quality (draft/letter quality) |
|  | 0 Character pitch (10, 12, 15, or proportional) |
|  | 0 Condensed |
|  | 0 Double-width |
|  | 0 Double-height |
|  | 0 Emphasized |
|  | 0 Double-strike |
|  | 0 Italic |
|  | 0 Underlined |
|  | 0 Double-underlined |
|  | 0 Overscore |
|  | 0 Strike-through |
|  | 0 Outline |
|  | 0 Shadow |

NOTES: High-speed draft is valid if the printer status is as follows:

- High-speed draft is selected by DIP switch.
- Emphasized character mode is not selected.
- Condensed character mode is not selected.
- Draft is selected.
- No D/L (download) characters are sent to the printer.
- The horizontal dot space of characters is not set.
- No bit image is sent to the printer.
- Super/subscript is not selected.
(The printer switches back into normal mode to print emphasized, condensed, or download characters and bit images.)

| Printing speed | See tables I-8 and I-9. |
| :--- | :--- |
| Printing columns | See Table 1-8. |
| Character matrix | See Table I-IO. |
| Character size | See Table I-10. |

Table 1-8. Printing (Text Mode)

| Print Pitch | Condensed | Printable Columns | Character Pitch (cpi) | Printing Speed (cps) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | Draft | LQ | HSD |
| 10 | 0 | 80 (*136) | 10 | 210 | 70 | 225 |
|  | 1 | 137 (*233) | 17.1 | 180 | 120 | - |
| 12 | 0 | 96 (*164) | 12 | 252 | 84 | - |
|  | 1 | 160 (*272) | 20 | 210 | 140 | - |
| 15 | 0 | 120(*204) | 15 | 315 | 105 | - |
|  | 1 | Invalid |  |  |  |  |

(*: 136 column)
cpi: characters per inch
cps: characters per second
LQ: letter quality
HSD: high-speed draft

Table 1-9. Printing (Bit Image Mode)

| Pins | Bit Image Printing Mode | Density (dpi) | Printable Dots | Printing Speed (ips) |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8 | Single-density | 60 | $480\left({ }^{*} 816\right)$ | 21.0 |
| 8 | Dual-density | 120 | $960\left({ }^{*} 1632\right)$ | 10.5 |
| 8 | Double-speed, dual-density | 120 | $960\left({ }^{*} 1632\right)$ | 21.0 |
| 8 | Quadruple-density | 240 | $1920\left({ }^{*} 3264\right)$ | 10.5 |
| 8 | CRT graphics | 80 | $640\left({ }^{*} 1088\right)$ | 10.5 |
| 8 | CRT graphics II | 90 | $720(* 1224)$ | 14.0 |
| 24 | Single-density | 60 | $480\left({ }^{*} 816\right)$ | 21.0 |
| 24 | Dual-density | 120 | $\left.960)^{*} 1632\right)$ | 10.5 |
| 24 | CRT graphics II | 90 | $720\left({ }^{*} 224\right)$ | 1 |
| 24 | Triple-density | 180 | $1440(* 2448)$ | 14.0 |
| 24 | Hex-density | 360 | $2880(* 4896)$ | 7.0 |

(*: 136 column)
dpi: dots per inch
ips: inches per second

REV.-A
Table I-10. Character Matrix and Character Size

| Printing Mode | Face Matrix | HDD | Character Size | Unit ESC sp |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| High-speed draft, 10 pitch | $7 \times 22$ | 90 | $2.0 \times 3.1$ | - |
| Draft, 10 pitch | $9 \times 22$ | 120 | $1.9 \times 3.1$ | 120 |
| Draft, 12 pitch | $9 \times 22$ | 120 | $1.9 \times 3.1$ | 120 |
| Draft, 15 pitch | $7 \times 16$ | 120 | $1.0 \times 2.3$ | 120 |
| Draft, 10 pitch, condensed | - | 240 | - | 120 |
| Draft, 12 pitch, condensed | - | 240 | - | 120 |
| LQ, 10 pitch | $27 \times 22$ | 360 | $2.2 \times 3.1$ | 180 |
| LQ, 12 pitch | $22 \times 16$ | 360 | $1.9 \times 3.1$ | 180 |
| LQ, 15 pitch | - | 360 | $1.6 \times 2.3$ | 180 |
| LQ, 10 pitch, condensed | - | 360 | - | 180 |
| LQ, 12 pitch, condensed | Max. $37 \times 22$ | 360 | $2.6 \times 3.1$ | 180 |
| LQ, proportional | Min. $18 \times 22$ | 360 | $1.0 \times 3.1$ | 180 |
| LQ, proportional, condensed | - | 360 | - | - |

NOTES: - HDD is horizontal dot density in dots per inch.

- Face matrix and character size indicate the size of the maximum character. This value is dependent on paper, ribbon, etc.
- Unit ESC sp (which also can be sent as unit, followed by the character string CHR(\&h20)), indicates the minimum length to be added to the right of the character specified with the ESC sp control code.
- "-" indicates that the character matrix is reshaped by printer firmware. Character width becomes half of the noncondensed character width.
(Typical draft character)


```
12 dots (10 CPI) 120 DPI
```

12 dots (10 CPI) 120 DPI
15 dots (12 CPI) 180 DPI
15 dots (12 CPI) 180 DPI
16 dots (15 CPI) 240 DPI
16 dots (15 CPI) 240 DPI
14 dots (condensed 10 CPI) 240 DPI
14 dots (condensed 10 CPI) 240 DPI
12 dots (condensed 12 CPI) 240 DPI

```
12 dots (condensed 12 CPI) 240 DPI
```

(Typical LQ character)


36 dots (10 CPI) 360 DPI
30 dots (12 CPI) 360 DPI
24 dots (15 CPI) 360 DPI
21 dots (condensed 10 CPI 360 DPI 18 dots (condensed 12 CPI 360 DPI

(Subscript character)


Figure 1-5. Character Matrix

REV.-A

### 1.3 INTERFACE OVERVIEW

The printer has a parallel interface with the specifications described below.

### 1.3.1 Parallel Interface

Specifications for the 8-bit parallel interface are as follows:

Data format
Synchronization
Handshaking
Signal level
Adaptable connector
Data transmission timing

8-bit parallel
$\overline{\text { STROBE }}$ signal
BUSY and $\overline{\text { ACKNLG signal }}$
TTL-compatible
57-30360 (Amphenol) or equivalent
See Figure I-6.


Figure 1-6. Data Transmission Timing

Table 1-1 1 shows the connector pin assignments and signal functions of the 8 -bit parallel interface.
Table I-I 1. Connector Pin Assignments and Signal Functions

| Pin No. | Signal Name | Return <br> Pin No. | Dir. | Functional Description |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 1 | STROBE | 19 | IN | STROBE pulse to read the input data. Pulse width must <br> be more than $0.5 \mu$ s. Input data is latched at falling <br> edge of this signal. |
| 2 |  |  |  | IN |
| 3 | DATA 1 | 20 | Parallel input data to the printer. |  |
| 4 | DATA 3 | 21 | IN | HIGH level means data 1. |
| 5 | DATA 4 | 22 | IN | LOW level means data 0. |
| 6 | DATA 5 | 23 | IN |  |
| 7 | DATA 6 | 24 | IN |  |
| 8 | DATA 7 | 26 | IN | IN |
| 9 | DATA 8 | 27 | IN |  |
| 10 | ACKNLG | 28 | OUT | This pulse indicates data has been receive d and the <br> printer is ready to accept more data. Pulse width is <br> approximately 1 $1 \mu$ s. |
| 11 |  | BUSY | 29 | OUT |
| 12 | PE | HIGH indicates the printer cannot accept nnore data. |  |  |
| 13 | SLCT |  |  | OUT |

Table I-I 1. Connector Pin Assignments and Signal Functions (Cont.)

| Pin No. | Signal Name | Return Pin No. | Dir. | Functional Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 14 | $\overline{\text { AUTOFEED-XT }}$ | - | IN | If LOW when the printer is initialized, the printer automatically performs a line feed upon input of the CR code (Auto LF). |
| 15 |  |  |  | Not used. |
| 16 | GND |  | - | Ground for twisted-pair grounding. |
| 17 | Chassis GND | - | - | Chassis ground level of printer. |
| 18 |  |  |  | Not used. |
| 19 to 30 | GND |  |  | Ground for twisted-pair grounding. |
| 31 | $\overline{\text { INIT }}$ | 16 | IN | Pulse (width: $50 \mu \mathrm{~s}$, min., active LOW) input for printer initialization. |
| 32 | $\overline{\text { ERROR }}$ |  | OUT | LOW indicates an error has occurred in the printer. |
| 33 | GND | - | - | Ground for twisted-pair grounding. |
| 34 |  |  |  | Not used. |
| 35 |  |  | OUT | Always HIGH. (Pulled up to +5 V through 3.3K ohm resistor.) |
| 36 | SLCT-IN | - | IN | DC 1/DC3 control is disabled. |

NOTES: 1. "Dir." indicates the direction of the signal flow as viewed from the printer.
2. "Return Pin No." denotes a twisted-pair return line.
3. The cable used must be shielded to prevent noise.
4. All interface conditions are based on TTL levels. Both the rise and fall times of all signals must be less than $0.2 \mu \mathrm{~s}$.
5. The AUTOFEED-XT signal can be set to LOW by DIP switch 2-4.
6. The $\overline{\text { SELECT-IN signal can be set to LOW by jumper } 3 .}$
7. Printing tests, including those of. the interface circuits, can be performed without using external equipment by setting DATA 1 - DATA 8 pins to the $\overline{\text { STROBE }}$ signal.

REV.-A

### 1.4 CONTROL PANEL

On the control panel are: a power button (labeled OPERATE), 7 non-lock type buttons, and 19 indicators.


Figure 1-7. Control Panel

## BUTTONS

(1) OPERATE Button

This button turns on the power supply to the printer.
(2) PAUSE Button

This button controls printer action. Pressing the button toggles the printer between PAUSE condition (no printing, no paper feeding, and not accepting data) and RUNNING. This button is also used in conjunction with the ALT button as a buffer clear to clear the input buffer and perform software initialization, as if ESC @ had been received.

## (3) LINE FEED/FORM FEED Button

Pressing this button performs a line feed, and holding down the button performs a form feed, irrespective of the PAUSE/RUNNING condition. This button is also used in conjunction with the ALT button as the micro reverse feed.
(4) LOAD/EJECT Button

Pressing this button loads or ejects the paper. Refer to Section 1.6.8, Sheet Loading and Sheet Ejection. This button is also used in conjunction with the ALT button as the micro forward feed.
(5) TEAR-OFF/BIN I/BIN 2 Button

In tractor-feed mode, pressing this button advances continuous paper to the tear-off position, and the TEAR-OFF indicator is lit. In friction-feed mode, pressing this button toggles between bin 1 and bin 2, and the selected BIN indicator is lit.
(6) ALT Button

This button is used only in combination with another button.
(7) FONT Button

Pressing this button selects a font, and pressing it continuously selects the next one, sequentially. The FONT LED indicates the currently selected font.
(8) CONDENSED Button

Pressing this button toggles the printing mode between normal and condensed, alternatively.

NOTE: Selections of the FONT and CONDENSED buttons are stored as defaults, so that the last FONT and the CONDENSED selection become effective when the printer is initialized.

## INDICATORS

(1) OPERATE (green)

Lit when the printer's OPERATE button is on, and AC power is supplied.
(2) PAUSE (orange)

Lit when the printer is in PAUSE mode (no printing, no paper feeding, and not accepting data).
(3) TEAR-OFF (orange)

Lit when the sheet is advanced to the tear-off position.
(4) DATA (orange)

Lit when the printer has received data from the host.
(5) PAPER-OUT (red)

Lit when the paper-out detector senses no paper. Refer to Section 1.6.3, Paper-out Detection and Forms Override Function.
(6) MULTI-PART (green)

Lit when the adjust lever is positioned at the 4th step or higher.
(7) BIN 1 (green)

Lit when bin 1 is selected.
(8) BIN 2 (green)

Lit when bin 2 is selected
(9) FONT (green) - Draft, Courier, Roman, Sans Serif, Prestige, Script, Script C, Orator, Orator-S, OCR-B These indicators show the currently selected font.
(10) CONDENSED (green)

Lit when condensed mode is selected.

REV.-A

### 1.5 DIP SWITCHES AND JUMPER SETTING

This section describes the DIP switch selections and jumper setting for the LQ-570 printer.

### 1.5.1 DIP Switch Settings

The two DIP switch banks for the printer, located on control panel, function as shown in tables I-I 2 through I-I 5. (Note that the status of the DIP switches is read only at power on or upon receipt of the INIT signal.)

Table l-12. Settings for DIP Switch 1 (SW1)

| No. | Description | ON | OFF | Factory <br> Setting |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Onternational character set and PC selection | See Table I-I 4. |  | ON <br> ON <br> 2 <br> 3 |
| 4 | Character table selection | Graphic | Italic | OFF |
| 5 | Graphic print direction | Unidir. | Bidir. | OFF |
| 6 | High-speed draft | Invalid | Valid | OFF |
| 7 | Input buffer | Invalid | Valid | OFF |
| 8 | I-inch skip continuous paper | ON | OFF | OFF |

Table 1-13. Settings for DIP Switch 2 (SW2)

| No. | Description | ON | OFF | Factory <br> Setting |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| 1 | Page length of continuous paper | See Table I-I 5. | OFF <br> OFF |  |
| 3 | Auto tear-off | ON | OFF | OFF |
| 4 | Auto LF | ON | OFF | OFF |

Table 1-14. International Character Set Selection

| 1-1 | $1-2$ | $1-3$ | Country | PC |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| ON | ON | ON | U.S. | 437 |
| ON | ON | OFF | France | 850 |
| ON | OFF | ON | Germany | 860 |
| ON | OFF | OFF | U.K. | 863 |
| OFF | ON | ON | Denmark 1 | 865 |
| OFF | ON | OFF | Sweden | '437 |
| OFF | OFF | ON | Italy | 437 |
| OFF | OFF | OFF | Spain 1 | 437 |

When SW I-4 is OFF, If graphic table was selected by ESC t 1, PC becomes 437.

When SW 1-4 is ON,
if italic table was selected by
ESC t 0 , country setting becomes U.S.

Table I-I 5. Page Length

| 2-I | $2-2$ | Page Length |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| OFF | OFF | 11 inches |
| ON | OFF | 12 inches |
| OFF | ON | 8.5 inches |
| ON | ON | $70 / 6$ inches |

### 1.5.2 Jumper Setting

If Jumper 3 is connected to GND, the SLCT-IN signal is fixed to LOW

REV.-A

### 1.6 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

This section describes the self-test and hexadecimal dump functions and also includes the error states, printer initialization, and buzzer operation.

### 1.6.1 Self-Test

To run the self-test using draft mode, turn the printer on while pressing the LOAD/EJECT button. To run the self-test using the letter quality (LQ) mode, turn the printer on while pressing the LINE FEED/FORM FEED button. You can stop or start self-test printing by pressing the PAUSE button. When you are satisfied with the self-test, stop the printing by pressing the PAUSE button and turn the printer off.

The firmware revision number is printed on the first line of the self-test, followed by the current DIP switch settings.


Figure 1-B. Self-Test Printout

### 1.6.2 Hexadecimal Dump Function

To put the printer in hex. dump mode, power it on while pressing both the LOAD/EJECT and LINE FEED/FORM FEED buttons. In hex. dump mode, the printer prints out the hexadecimal representation of the input data, along with the corresponding ASCII characters. This function is valuable for checking the data the printer has received from the host. If input data is a control code rather than a character code, a period (.) is printed in the ASCII column.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { of } 7060 \text { 6 } 520 \text { of } 6 b 206120646174612064 \text { mple of a data d } \\
& 756070 \quad 20 \quad 70 \quad 72 \quad 696 E \quad 746 F \quad 75 \quad 74 \quad 2 E \quad 20 \quad 54 \text { j8 ump printout. Th } \\
& 697320666561747572 \text { os } 206060168 \text { 65 } 73 \text { is feature makes } \\
& \text { OA } 2020202020697420656173792066 \text { 6F it easy fo }
\end{aligned}
$$

Figure I-9. Hexadecimal Dump Function

### 1.6.3 Paper-out Detection and Forms Override Function

When the paper-out detector, attached to the printer mechanism, detects a paper-end, the printer first performs a forms override. If paper loading fails, the BUSY signal goes HIGH, the PAPER OUT indicator is lit, the interface PE signal becomes HIGH, the ERROR signal becomes LOW, and the printer enters the PAUSE condition automatically.

By ignoring the paper out, the printer can print additional lines after the paper out is detected. This function is called the forms override function. After you load new paper and press the PAUSE button, the printer recovers to the RUNNING condition, and printing restarts.

The printer enters the paper-out condition only when a paper-out is detected after the printer performs paper loading.

### 1.6.4 Error Conditions

If any of the following error conditions are detected, the printer automatically enters PAUSE condition.

- Home position is not detected at printer mechanism initialization.
- Home position is detected during printing.
- The PAUSE button is pressed, and the printer enters PAUSE condition.
- A paper-out is detected after performing paper loading operation.

If parallel interface is selected, the following interface signals are output to indicate the error and to stop data transmission:

The BUSY signal becomes HIGH.
The ERROR signal becomes LOW.
No $\overline{\text { ACKNLG }}$ pulse is sent.

### 1.6.5 Buzzer Operation

The buzzer sounds under the following conditions:

- A paper-out error is detected (beeps 3 times for 0.1 second, with 0.1 second intervals).
- Abnormal carriage movement is detected (beeps 5 times for 0.5 second, with 0.5 second intervals).
- A panel setting is accepted ( 0.1 second beep).


### 1.6.6 Printer Initialization

There are three initialization methods: hardware initialization, software initialization, and panel initialization.
(1) Hardware initialization

This type of initialization takes place when the printer power button is turned on (and the AC power cord is plugged in) or when the INIT signal is received.

When the printer is initialized, it performs the following actions:
(a) Initializes printer mechanism.
(b) Clears input data buffer.
(c) Clears downloaded character set.
(d) Clears print buffer.
(e) Returns printer settings to their default values.
(2) Software initialization

Input of the ESC @ command also initializes the printer. Printer initialization by ESC @ code does not perform functions (a), (b), and (c) above. The settings changed by the last SelecType operation are maintained.
(3) Panel initialization

This printer can be initialized by pressing the PAUSE button in combination with the ALT button. When the printer is initialized from the front panel, functions (a) and (c) above are not performed. The settings changed by the last SelecType operation are maintained.

### 1.6.7 Default Values

When the printer is initialized, the following default values are set:

Page position
Left and right margins
Line spacing
Vertical tabs
Horizontal tabs
Family number of type style
Download characters

Character spacing
Printing effects
Condensed printing
Printer condition

The current paper position becomes the top-of-form position Released
1/6 inch
Cleared
Every 8 characters (relative)
Last font selected from the panel
Kept - software initialization
Cleared - hardware initialization
10 cpi
Cleared, except condensed printing
Last setting selected from the panel
RUN

### 1.6.8 Sheet Loading and Sheet Ejection

The release lever can disengage the pull-tractor unit drive mechanism, giving this printer improved paper-handling for functions that utilize the release lever. These functions are described below:

## Automatic cut-sheet loading without the cut-sheet feeder

Move the release lever to the friction-feed position, and place the sheet along the paper guide (top or front). A few seconds later, the sheet is automatically loaded to the top-of-form position and the printer enters the RUNNING condition.

## Automatic cut-sheet loading and ejection with cut-sheet feeder

Move the release lever to the friction-feed position, and place the sheets into the hopper of the cut-sheet feeder.
Pressing the LOAD/EJECT button loads one sheet to the top-of-form position. If a paper-out is detected before printing starts, a sheet will again be loaded automatically to the top-of-form position.

## Continuous paper loading and ejection (backout)

Move the release lever to the REAR PUSH position, and insert the paper into the tractor unit. Pressing the LOAD/EJECT button loads the paper automatically to the top-of-form position. If a paper-out is detected before printing starts, the paper will be loaded automatically to the top-of-form position.

If the LOAD/EJECT button is pressed after continuous paper has been loaded, the paper is ejected backward to the push tractor unit. To back out several pages, press the LOAD/EJECT button several times. Each time LOAD/EJECT is pressed, reverse feed is performed for a single page.

When the paper is at the current setting for the top-of-form position, the top-of-form adjustment function is valid for the next loaded position. At this time, the LOAD/EJECT button advances the paper forward, and the LINE FEED/FORM FEED button moves the paper backward.

The adjusted top-of-form position for continuous paper is saved in EEPROM, but the setting for cut sheet paper is not saved.

### 1.6.9 Tear-off Function

The below tear-off function is limited under the push tractor mode.

## Auto-tear-off

The auto-tear-off function is enabled by DIP switch setting. When this function is enabled and the release lever is in the tractor position, the paper advances to the tear-off position automatically if the input data buffer is empty and the printer is in the RUNNING condition. The TEAR-OFF LED lights to indicate that you can use the LOAD/EJECT and LINE FEED/FORM FEED buttons, in combination with the ALT button, for backward and forward micro feed adjustment.

Using micro feed, adjust the paper to meet the tear-off edge. Once the tear-off position is set, this setting remains valid even after the printer is turned off or initialized. If subsequent data is sent to the printer, the paper returns to the original position automatically and printing starts. If the PAUSE button is pressed while the paper is advanced to the tear-off position, the paper returns to the original position (and the printer enters the PAUSE condition).

REV.-B

## Short-tear-off

To access the short-tear-off function, press the TEAR-OFF button. The release lever must be in the tractor position. The paper advances to the tear-off position whether the printer is in PAUSE or RUNNING condition. At this time, the TEAR-OFF LED lights to indicate that you can use the LOAD/EJECT and LINE FEED/FORM FEED buttons, in conjunction with the ALT button, for backward and forward micro feed adjustment. Using micro feed, adjust the paper to meet the tear-off edge. Once the tear-off position is set, this setting remains valid even after the printer is turned off or initialized. If subsequent data is sent to the printer and the printer is in the RUNNING condition, the paper returns to its original position automatically and printing starts. If the TEAR-OFF button is pressed again while the paper is advanced to the tear-off position, paper returns to its original position whether the printer is in PAUSE or RUNNING condition.

### 1.6.10 LEVER, G, ADJUST Operation

The LEVER ,G, ADJUST must be set to the proper position for the paper thickness. If this lever has been set to the 4th step or higher, printing speed is reduced and the head energy is increased.

Table I-1 6. Lever Positions

| Lever Position | Paper Thickness |
| :--- | :---: |
| 0 (2nd step) | $0.06-0.12 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| 1 (3rd step) | $0.13-0.18 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| 2 (4th step) | $0.19-0.25 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| 3 (5th step) | $0.26-0.32 \mathrm{~mm}$ |

NOTE: If printing density becomes lighter, adjust the LEVER, G, ADJUST position one step higher.


Figure l-10. Lever Positions

### 1.6.11 Printer Protection for Heavy-Duty Printing

This printer has a printhead protection function to prevent it from overheating and to protect the printer when the head driver voltage drops. If head temperature exceeds its maximum value, printing stops automatically until the head temperature drops to a certain value before printing resumes. Printing resumes at a lower print speed at first.

However, as the head temperature decreases, print speed increases to normal speed automatically. If the head temperature continues to increase at the lower speed, printing is stopped or resumed as temperature increases or decreases.

If the voltage supplied to the head drive circuit drops below its minimum limit as a result of heavy-duty printing, printing is interrupted immediately. When the power supply voltage recovers to a certain value, the remaining print line is printed at half speed. This protective action occurs when half or more of the wires are activated continuously.

### 1.7 MAIN COMPONENTS

The main components of the LQ-570/1070 printers are designed for easy removal and replacement to maintain and repair the printer. The main components are:

1) CO62 MAIN board:
2) CO62 PNL board:
3) CO62 PSB/PSE board:
4) $\mathrm{M}-5 \mathrm{E} 10 / 5 \mathrm{E} 60$ :
the main control board; the CPU on this board controls all main functions. the control panel board.
the power supply board.
the printer mechanism.


Printer Mechanism M-5E 10
(LQ-570)


Printer Mechanism M-5E60
(LQ-1070)

Figure I-1 1. LQ-570/1 070 Component Layout

### 1.7.1 C062 MAIN Board (Main Control Circuit Board)

The CO62 MAIN Board for the LQ-570 consists of a TMP90C04 1 N 8 -bit CPU, an E05A50 gate array, a PROM (5 12K), a PSRAM (256K), a mask ROM (character generator, 2M), an EEPROM, and a hybrid IC (STK-6022B). In addition to this, the board for the LQ-1070 also includes a SRAM (64K).


### 1.7.2 C062 PNL Board (Control Panel Circuit Board)

The CO62 PNL board is the LQ-570/1 070 control panel, which includes the indicator LEDs, switches, and DIP switches.


Figure 1-13. C062 PNL Board

### 1.7.3 C062 PSB/PSE Board (Power Supply Circuit Board)

The power supply unit consists of a switching regulator circuit, which converts the AC line voltage to the DC voltages (for example, +35 V and +5 V ) used by the printer. The CO62 PSB board is 120 V input type, and the CO62 PSE board is 220/240V input type.


Figure 1-14. C062 PSB/PSE Board

### 1.7.4 Printer Mechanism (M-5E10/M-5E60)

The M-5E10/M-5E60 printer mechanism was developed specifically for use with LQ-570/1070 printer. The components include a carriage motor, carriage mechanism, paper-feed motor, paper-feed mechanism, ribbon-feed mechanism, printhead, and sensors. This printer mechanism allows three ways of paper insertion.


This picture shows an 80-column Printer. The M-5E10 and M-5E60 differ in width only.

Figure l-15. Model-5E10/5E60 Printer Mechanism

### 1.7.5 Housing

I The LQ-570/1070 housing consists of the upper, lower, and front cases. The front case houses the control panel board.
The lower case contains the printer mechanism, the main control circuit board, and power supply circuit board.


Figure I-I 6. Housing (LQ-570/LQ-1 070)

## CHAPTER 2 OPERATION PRINCIPLES

2.1 OVERVIEW OF PRINTER MECHANISM OPERATION ..... 2-1
2.1.1 Printhead Mechanism ..... 2-1
2.1.2 Carriage Movement Mechanism ..... 2-2
2.1.3 Paper Feed Mechanism ..... 2-3
2.1.3.1 Paper Advance Mechanisms ..... 2-3
2.1.3.2 Paper Insertion Entrances ..... 2-6
2.1.4 Ribbon Advance Mechanism ..... 2-10
2.2 POWER SUPPLY OPERATION ..... 2-11
2.2.1 Power Supply Overview ..... 2-11
2.2.2 Supply Circuit Operation ..... 2-11
2.3 CONTROL CIRCUIT OPERATION ..... 2-13
2.3.1 Control Circuit Operation Overview. ..... 2-13
2.3.2 Reset Circuit ..... 2-15
2.3.3 Sensor Circuits ..... 2-16
2.3.4 MOTOR, CR Drive Circuit ..... 2-17
2.3.5 MOTOR, PF Drive Circuit ..... 2-18
2.3.6 Printhead Drive Circuit ..... 2-19
2.3.7 Parallel Interface Circuit. ..... 2-20
2.3.7 EEPROM Control Circuit. ..... 2-20

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2-1. How the Printhead Works..................................................2-1
Figure 2-2. Carriage Movement..............................................................2-2
$\begin{aligned} \text { Figure 2-3. } & \text { Paper-Thickness Gap LEVER, G, ADJUST } \\ & \text { Movement.. .............................................................................2-2 }\end{aligned}$
Figure 2-4. Top Entrance Friction Feed................................................2-3
Figure 2-5. Push Tractor Operation ......................................................2-4
Figure 2-6. Pull Tractor Operation.. .......................................................2-5
Figure 2-7. Push-Pull Tractor Operation.. .............................................2-5
Figure 2-8. LEVER, RELEASE Movement ............................................ 2-6
Figure 2-9. Paper Path for Top Entrance Friction Feed.. ................ 2-6
Figure 2-10. Paper Path for Rear Entrance Push Tractor Feed ...... 2-7
Figure 2-11. Paper Path for Rear Entrance Push-Pull Tractor Feed2-7


## LIST OF TABLES

| Table 2-1. | Paper Advance Methods and Paper Paths. | 2-3 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Table 2-2. | Ribbon Advance Gear Linkage. | 2-10 |
| Table 2-3. | Power Supply Boards | 2-11 |
| Table 2-4. | Power Supply Output Voltages and Applications.. | 2-11 |
| Table 2-5. | Functions of the Main IC and Circuits. | 2-14 |
| Table 2-6. | MOTOR, CR Drive Modes | 2-17 |

### 2.1 OVERVIEW OF PRINTER MECHANISM OPERATION

This section describes the PRINTER MECHANISM of the Model-5E10/5E60 printer unit and explains how the printer works. The Model-5E10/5E60 has a PRINTER MECHANISM that features a 24-pin impact dot printhead for serial printing. There are four main parts to the printer mechanism: 1) the printhead mechanism, 2) the carriage movement mechanism, 3) the paper advance mechanism, and 4) the ribbon advance mechanism. Each of these is described below.

### 2.1.1 Printhead Mechanism

The printhead mechanism consists of the printhead itself, the ink ribbon, and the PLATEN. The printhead contains 24 wires in a zigzag arrangement in two rows of 12. A drive coil is provided for each of these wires to make the wires move in and out of the printhead and print dots independently of each other. The basic way that the wires are driven is described in the four steps below.

1. The control circuit outputs the drive signal to the printhead drive circuit. This changes the printhead drive voltage, and current flows through the corresponding printhead coil. The coil acts as a solenoid and generates a magnetic force.
2. This induced force causes the plate to approach the coil rod and the associated dot wire is rapidly ejected to impact on the platen.
3. The dot wire presses the ink ribbon up against the paper as it hits the platen, and in this way prints a dot on the paper.
4. As soon as the current through the coil is switched off, the force induced in the coil rod stops. The plate then returns to its original position (its position before the coil was energized) through the action of the plate spring. After the dot wire hits the platen, the rebounding force of hitting the platen works together with the wire return spring to pull the wire back to its original position in relation to the plate.


Figure 2-1. How the Printhead Works
Figure 2-I shows the action of the PRINTER MECHANISM when a single dot is printed.
The printhead tends to heat up after a period of continuous printing. To minimize the possibility of the dot wire drive coils overheating within the printhead and any loss of performance, the head is equipped with a thermistor that detects the head temperature. When this thermistor detects changes in the printhead temperature, the voltage signal changes. This signal change is read by the control circuit for feedback control.

### 2.1.2 Carriage Movement Mechanism

A timing belt is connected to the carriage on the lower side. With the printhead installed, this carriage moves in either direction along the SHAFT, CR, GUIDE. The carriage is driven by the MOTOR, CR a stepping motor that drives the TIMING BELT via the BELT PULLEY. The DETECTOR ASSY., HP DETECTS when the carriage is in the home position.


Figure 2-2. Carriage Movement

The paper-thickness LEVER, G, ADJUST allows the printer to use different weights of paper (different thicknesses). The user controls this lever and alters the platen gap on the SHAFT, CR, GUIDE by changing its position. Changing the position of the lever rotates the CHAFT, CR, GUIDE and moves the carriage either toward or away from the PLATEN. Moving the paper-thickness LEVER, G, ADJUST to the fourth position or higher slows down the printing speed to protect the printhead. The PG sensor reads the current position of the paper-thickness LEVER,G,ADJUST.


Figure 2-3. Paper-Thickness LEVER, G, ADJUST Movement

### 2.1.3 Paper Feed Mechanism

Cut sheet paper is advanced by friction feed. Continuous form paper is advanced using a tractor feed mechanism.
There are three ways to advance the paper with tractor feed: using the push tractor, using the pull tractor, and using the push and pull tractors together. Any one of these three tractor configurations can feed paper through the printer. In normal operation, the printer is set up with one tractor, which functions as either a push tractor or pull tractor, depending on where it is attached to the printer body. To use the push-pull tractor feed method, an optional tractor must be attached in addition.
There are also four ways to insert paper into the printer. Different paper paths are used for different types of paper. Table 2-I lists which paper paths can be used for each of the various paper advance methods.

Table 2-1. Paper Advance Methods and Paper Paths

|  | Paper Insertion (Paper Paths) |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Paper Advance Method | Rear <br> Entrance | Front <br> Entrance | Bottom <br> Entrance | Top <br> Entrance |
| Friction Feed | No | OK | No | OK |
| Push Tractor | OK | No | No | No |
| Pull Tractor | No | OK | OK | No |
| Push-pull Tractor Feed | OK | No | No | No |

### 2.1.3.1 Paper Advance Mechanisms

This section describes how the friction feed and tractor feed mechanisms work to advance the paper in the printer.

## Friction Feed Method

The paper is held between the platen and paper advance roller, and between the paper eject roller and paper eject unit cover. The paper-feed pinion gear, turning in the direction of the black arrow, drives the COMBINATION GEAR, 8.5, 30. The COMBINATION GEAR, 8.5, 30 turns the SPUR GEAR, 34, paper-feed rollers, and top ROLLER ASSY., PAPER EJECT. The paper then advances in the direction of the white arrow.

The paper advance roller spring holds the paper against the platen. Setting the LEVER, G, ADJUST to the tractor feed position releases this pressure and frees the paper. Figure 2-4 illustrates friction feed when paper is inserted through the top entrance.


Figure 2-4. Top Path Friction Feed

## REV.-B

## Push Tractor Method

When the push tractor is selected, the SPUR GEAR, 16 engages the SPUR GEAR, 17 (Tractor gear) on the TRACTOR ASSY. COMBINATION GEAR, $8.5,30$ is driven by the paper-feed gear, which in turn is driven by the paper-feed motor pinion gear. The paper-feed pinion gear, when turning in the direction of the black arrow, results in pushing the paper through the mechanism.

I During tractor feeding, the LEVER, G, ADJUST is set to the tractor position to disengage the friction drive. This releases the pressure between the paper advance roller and the platen. Figure 2-5 illustrates push tractor operation.


Figure 2-5. Push Tractor Operation

## Pull Tractor Method

Using pull tractor feed to advance the paper is basically the same as using push tractor feed. In push tractor feed, the TRACTOR ASSY. (paper advance mechanism) is before the paper entrance. It pushes the paper through the PRINTER MECHANISM. Pull tractor feed, however, has the opposite arrangement, with the tractor situated after the paper entrance. Since it pulls the paper through the PRINTER MECHANISM, it requires no paper tension unit. Figure 2-6 illustrates pull tractor operation tractor when paper is inserted through the bottom path.


Figure 2-6. Pull Tractor Operation

## Push-Pull Tractor Method

This is a combination of the push tractor and pull tractor methods. Two tractors are used, one in front of and one behind the paper entrance, to advance the paper. They act simultaneously to push and pull the paper through the PRINTER MECHANISM. Figure 2-7 illustrates push-pull tractor operation.


Figure 2-7. Push-Pull Tractor Operation

REV.-B
The LEVER, RELEASE switches between friction feed and tractor feed. Setting the LEVER, RELEASE to the friction feed position presses the paper advance roller against the PLATEN. Setting the release lever to the tractor feed position releases this pressure, so that the paper advance roller separates from the PLATEN. The DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE senses the current position of the LEVER, RELEASE.


Paper-Feed Roller
Figure 2-8. LEVER, RELEASE Movement

### 2.1.3.2 Paper Insertion Entrances

This section describes the different ways to feed paper into the printer.

## Top entrance paper insertion

When you feed paper into the printer through the top entrance, the method to advance the paper is friction feed.

There are two paper-out detectors: the front paper-out detector is in front of the PRINTER MECHANISM and the rear paper-out detector is behind the PRINTER MECHANISM. When paper is inserted through the top entrance, the rear detector senses when the paper runs out.


Figure 2-9. Paper Path for Top Entrance Friction Feed

## Rear entrance paper insertion

When you feed paper into the printer through the rear entrance, the method to advance the paper can be: the push tractor, or the push-pull tractor. The rear paper-out detector senses when the paper- has run out.


Figure 2-10. Paper Path for Rear Entrance Push Tractor Feed


Figure 2-I 1. Paper Path for Rear Entrance Push-Pull Tractor Feed

## Bottom entrance paper insertion

When you feed paper into the printer through the bottom entrance, the pull tractor advances the paper. The front paper-out detector senses when the paper runs out.


Figure 2-12. Paper Path for Bottom Entrance Pull Tractor Feed

## Front entrance paper insertion

When you feed paper into the printer through the front entrance, the paper can be advanced either with friction feed or the pull tractor. The front paper-out detector senses when the paper runs out.


Figure 2-13. Paper Path for Front Entrance Friction Feed


Figure 2-14. Paper Path for Front Entrance Pull Tractor Feed

REV.-B

### 2.1.4 Ribbon Advance Mechanism

The ribbon drive gear advances the ribbon through a gear linkage. This arrangement of gears makes the ribbon drive gear always rotate in a counterclockwise direction, regardless of the direction the carriage is moving.

Table 2-2. Ribbon Advance Gear Linkage

| Direction of Carriage Movement | Gear Linkage |
| :---: | :---: |
| Left to right (arrow - ) | PULLEY, DRIVEN • Ribbon transmission gear COMBINATION GEAR (1) - COMBINATION GEAR (3) COMBINATION GEAR (4) - RATCHET, RD |
| Right to left (arrow ${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ ) | PULLEY, DRIVEN $\zeta$ Ribbon transmission gear $\zeta$ COMBINATION GEAR (1) $\square$ COMBINATION GEAR (2) $\square$ RATCHET. RD |

The ink ribbon within the cartridge case is an endless ribbon that is held against the ribbon advance roller by the pressure of the ribbon grip roller. The ribbon advance roller, linked to the ribbon drive gear, winds the ink ribbon.

The ribbon brake spring, attached to the exit slot of the cartridge case, prevents slack in the ribbon and keeps the ribbon tension correct. The ribbon mask keeps the paper clean by preventing the ribbon from brushing against the paper.


Figure 2-15. Ribbon Advance Mechanism

### 2.2 POWER SUPPLY OPERATION

The printer can be powered by either of two power supply boards: the 120 V CO62 PSB board or the 2201240 V CO62 PSE board. The only difference in the way these two boards operate is in the primary circuitry. How they work to supply power to the printer is identical. These power boards output the DC current necessary to drive the printer control circuits and printer drive mechanism. Table 2-3 shows the input voltages and fuse ratings for these boards.

Table 2-3. Power Supply Boards

| Board | Input Voltage (VAC) | Fuse F1 Rating |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CO62 PSB | 103.5 to 132 | $2.5 \mathrm{~A} / 125 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| CO62 PSE | 198 to 264 | $1.25 \mathrm{~A} / 250 \mathrm{~V}$ |

### 2.2.1 Power Supply Overview

The power supply board has two power output lines that supply power to the various control circuits and drive mechanisms. Table 2-4 lists the parts of the printer that run off these two DC output supply voltages.

Table 2-4. Power Supply Output Voltages and Applications

| Output Supply Voltage (DC) | Applications |
| :--- | :--- |
| +35 v | MOTOR, CR drive <br> MOTOR, PF drive <br> Printhead drive |
| +5 v | CO62 MAIN board logic circuitry <br> Various sensors <br> Control panel LEDs <br> MOTOR, PF hold |

### 2.2.2 Supply Circuit Operation

Figure 2-16 shows the power supply circuitry in block diagram form. AC power feeds into the printer from the external power source. A filter circuit removes the noise. The AC voltage then undergoes full wave rectification and is smoothed to produce the direct current supply voltage. This voltage is fed through a switching circuit and secondary smoothing circuit to produce the stepped down +35 VDC supply. $\mathrm{A}+35 \mathrm{~V}$ line voltage detector circuit is connected to the switching circuit. This feedback control arrangement ensures that the +35 VDC supply is kept stabilized.

The +5 VDC supply is achieved by feeding the +35 VDC line through the +5 VDC power supply circuit. This circuit further steps down the +35 VDC voltage and outputs a stabilized +5 VDC supply.

There are two main features of the power supply circuit. First, the power supply switch is in the secondary circuitry. When this switch is turned off, the switching circuit is de-energized and output of the +35 VDC supply stops. However, since the switch is in the secondary circuitry, while the printer remains plugged into the external AC supply current continues to flow in the primary circuitry, whether the power supply switch is turned off or on. For this reason, before you perform any maintenance work, you must disconnect the printer from the external AC power supply by unplugging it from the power source.

REV.-A
Second, there are four circuits to protect the supply circuitry and avoid danger. The +5 VDC line contains a current overload protection circuit and a voltage overload protection circuit. The current overload protection circuit is part of the +5 VDC supply circuit. It cuts the +5 VDC line if the current is too great. The +5 V voltage overload protection circuit cuts the supply if the voltage reaches or exceeds $\mathbf{+ 7} \mathbf{V D C}$. It stops the switching circuit operation, which stops the output of the $\mathbf{+ 5}$ VDC line.

The +35 VDC line has a voltage overload protection circuit and a voltage drop protection circuit. The +35 V voltage overload protection circuit cuts the supply if the voltage reaches or exceeds +36 VDC . It stops the switching circuit operation, which stops the output of the +35 VDC line. The voltage drop protection circuit protects the printer from such damage as might occur from short circuiting in the secondary circuitry of the +35 VDC line. If a voltage drop is detected, it stops the switching circuit operation, which stops the output of the +35 VDC line.

## Power Supply Board



Figure 2-16. Power Supply Circuit Block Diagram

### 2.3 CONTROL CIRCUIT OPERATION

The control circuit consists of two boards: the C062 MAIN board, which acts as the main board, and the C062 PNL board, which acts as the control panel board. This section describes how these boards work.

### 2.3.1 Control Circuit Operation Overview

The printer CPU is an 8-bit CPU TMP90CO4 1 running at 10 MHz . It oversees control of all the components of the printer. The EO5A50 gate array contains various memory management functions that control the assignment of the memory and I/O areas. Rationalization and simplification of the circuitry is achieved through use of the STK-6022B, which holds all the driver circuits for driving the PRINTER MECHANISM on a single chip. Figure 2-I 7 shows the control circuits in block diagram form.

## CO62 PNL Board



## PRINTER MECHANISM

DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE Release sensor DETECTOR ASSY., PE, FRONT Front paper-out detector (positioned in front of the PRINTER MECHANISM) DETECTOR ASSY., PE, REAR Rear paper-out detector (positioned behind the PRINTER MECHANISM)

Figure 2-17. Control Circuit Block Diagram

REV.-B
Table 2-5 lists the functions of the main components and circuits of the printer. The CPU converts the print data sent from the host computer to image data (the print image). The image data is then loaded to RAM. Each line of data is processed sequentially. The CPU transfers the print data to the printhead drive circuit. The CPU sends the printhead drive pulse to the printhead drive circuit. The length of this pulse corresponds to the printhead drive voltage. The head drive circuit then outputs the head drive signal.


Figure 2-18. Data Flow

Table 2-5. Functions of the Main IC and Circuits

| IC or Circuit | Location | Functions |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| TMP90C041 | 1C | Receives data from the host computer and loads the data to the input <br> buffer in RAM (under interrupt processing control). Expands the input data <br> held in the buffer to create image data. Loads this image data to the <br> image buffer in RAM. Transfers the image data to the printhead drive <br> circuit. Also controls various parts of the PRINTER MECHANISM, such as <br> the motors. |
| EO5A50 | 4D | This is a gate array consisting of three components configured on a <br> single chip: . <br> Memory Management Unit <br> Handles CPU memory in ROM, RAM, and mask ROM, and assigns <br> addresses for other devices. |
| Parallel Interface (Parallel I/F) |  |  |
| Holds the parallel interface functions. |  |  |
| Reset Circuit |  |  |
| Contains the circuit that generates the RESET signal. |  |  |

Table 2-5. Functions of the Main IC and Circuits (Cont.)

| IC or Circuit | Location | Functions |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| STK-6022B | 2 A | This is a single chip that houses drive circuits for the printhead, MOTOR,CR <br> and MOTOR, PF of the PRINTER MECHANISM. The chip also includes the <br> various sensor input circuits for the PRINTER MECHANISM. |
| PROM | 5 E | PROM contains the program that runs the CPU. |
| RAM | 6 E | Holds the CPU working area and the various buffers. (1 E is not used for <br> an 80-column device and is not installed.) |
| MROM <br> (Mask ROM) | 4E | Holds the character design (also called the character generator). |
| EEPROM | 4 c | EEPROM is an electronically writable and erasable ROM used to hold such <br> information as the TOF position. |
| Vref Circuit | - | This is a circuit for generating the reference voltage used in the A/D <br> convertor within the CPU. |

### 2.3.2 Reset Circuit

Figure 2-19 shows the reset circuit in block diagram form. The reset circuit issues the RESET signal. Each part of the control circuits is initialized when this RESETsignal is received. The conditions when the $\overline{\text { RESET signal is output are described below. }}$

When turning on the power supply
Immediately after the power has been turned on, STK-6022B (2A) outputs the VCCON pulse. EO5A50 (4D) receives this pulse and then outputs the $\overline{\text { DISC }}$ pulse. The electrical charge in the condenser within the STK-6022B is then discharged. After this, STK-6022B outputs the THLD signal, and EO5A50 then outputs the $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ signal. After a certain time has elapsed, the charge in the condenser in the STK-6022B builds up again. The THLD signal is canceled and then the $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ signal is canceled.

## Resets performed by the CPU itself (CPU self-reset)

The CPU outputs the RESET signal if there is a RESET request for EO5A50 and if EO5A50 has output the DISC pulse.


Figure 2-19. Reset Circuit Block Diagram


Figure 2-20. $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ Signal Timing

### 2.3.3 Sensor Circuits

Figure 2-21 shows the sensor circuits in block diagram form. Detection of any excessive printhead temperature causes the TEMP2 signal to be sent directly to the CPU. Other signals, such as the CRHOME signal, pass through the STK-6022B unit before reaching the CPU. Terminals P50 to P55 on the CPU are used for the $A / D$ convertor.

The Vref circuit generates the A/D convertor reference voltage Vref.


Figure 2-21. Sensor Circuit Block Diagram

### 2.3.4 MOTOR, CR Drive Circuit

Figure 2-22 shows the MOTOR, CR drive circuit. An open-loop, constant-current drive arrangement is used for running the MOTOR, CR. The motor is driven by 2.2 phase excitation and $\mathrm{l}-2$ phase excitation. 2-2 phase excitation corresponds to two l-2 phase excitation steps. Thus, for each single step phase change of a $2-2$ phase excitation motor, the carriage moves $1 / / 20$ inch. For each single step phase change of a $\mathrm{I}-2$ phase excitation motor, the carriage moves $1 / 240$ inch.

The MOTOR, CR drive circuit of the STK-6022B detects the amount of current flowing in the MOTOR, CR coil and regulates this current. The current flowing through the coil varies, depending on the speed of the MOTOR, CR. The amount of current is set by the CPU via the EO5A50 I/O port. Signals are sent to SELR1 to SELR4 on the STK-6022B. The STK-6022B sets the coil current to correspond to the MOTOR, CR speed.

Ports P60 to P63 on the CPU are used exclusively as control ports for the stepping motor.


Figure 2-22. MOTOR, CR Drive Circuit

Table 2-6. MOTOR, CR Drive Modes

| Drive Mode | Excitation Type | Drive Frequency Type | Standard Print Character |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $3.214 \times$ speed | $2-2$ phase | 2700 pps | High Speed Draft |
| $3 \times$ speed | $2-2$ phase | 2520 pps | Draft |
| $2 \times$ speed | $2-2$ phase | 1680 pps |  |
| $1.5 \times$ speed | $1-2$ phase | 2520 pps |  |
| $4 / 3 \times$ speed | $1-2$ phase | 2240 pps | LO |
| $1 \times$ speed | $1-2$ phase | 1680 pps |  |
| $2 / 3 \times$ speed | $1-2$ phase | 1120 pps |  |
| $1 / 2 \times$ speed | $1-2$ phase | 840 pps |  |

## I 2.3.5 MOTOR, PF Drive Circuit

The printer uses a stepping motor to advance the paper. The minimum amount of paper that can be advanced is $1 / 360$ inch. The motor is a $2-2$ phase or $1-2$ phase, constant-voltage drive type. P70 to I P73 on the CPU are the control ports for the stepping motor. MOTOR, PF phase data is output through these ports. PFA to PFD are turned on and off within the STK-6022B according to this phase data sent from the CPU.

When the MOTOR, PF is running, the voltage supplying the coil of the MOTOR, PF is +35 V . When the MOTOR, PF is not running and is in hold status, the supply voltage to the coil is +5 V . Switching between these two supply voltages occurs at the PFCOM terminal of the STK-6022B when PFENB is turned on or off.


Figure 2-23. MOTOR, PF Drive Circuit

### 2.3.6 Printhead Drive Circuit

Figure 2-24 shows the printhead drive circuit in block diagram form. The print data already has been expanded to create the image data. The CPU splits up this data three times and transfers this information to the latch circuit within the STK-6022B'. The CPU samples the voltage of the +35 V line via the A/D convertor (see Section 2.3.3).

The CPU outputs a pulse via the CPU time output port P83. The length of this pulse corresponds to the voltage of the +35 V line. This pulse becomes the head drive signal. In this way, STK-6022B outputs head drive signals (signals HD 1 to HD24) that relate to voltage levels through the length of the pulses. These signals are output to the head for each of the sections of print data that were created by subdividing the data three times before sending.

By sampling the +35 V line voltage and determining the length of the head drive signal, it is possible to maintain the energy supplied to the head at a constant level. If the voltage of the +35 V line is HIGH , the CPU shortens the output pulse. If the voltage of the +35 V line is LOW, the CPU lengthens the output pulse.

Figure 2-25 shows the timing of the output of the head drive signal.


Figure 2-24. Printhead Drive Circuit


Figure 2-25. Head Drive Signal Output Timing

REV.-A

### 2.3.7 Parallel Interface Circuit

Figure 2-26 shows the parallel interface circuit in block diagram form. The data sent from the host computer is latched within EO5A50 by the STROBE signal. EO5A50 outputs the BUSY signal automatically to stop the host computer from sending the next data and then outputs the IBF signal for the CPU. The CPU receives the IBF signal via the interrupt signal input port P82, recognizes that the data has been received from the host computer, and reads the data that was latched in the EO5A50. Next, the CPU resets the BUSY signal so that the printer is ready to receive more data from the host computer.


Figure 2-26. Parallel Interface Circuit

### 2.3.7 EEPROM Control Circuit

Figure 2-27 shows the EEPROM control circuit in block diagram form. The EEPROM is used to hold such information as the top-of-form position. EEPROM is non-volatile memory and information is not lost when the printer is powered off. Since the EEPROM is a serial I/O type device, the 8 -bit parallel data received from the CPU is converted to serial data by the EO5A50.


Figure 2-27. EEPROM Control Circuit

## CHAPTER 3 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

3.1 OVERVIEW ..... 3-1
3.1.1 Precautions for Disassembling the Printer. ..... 3-1
3.1.2 Tools ..... 3-1
3.1.3 Service Checks After Repair ..... 3-2
3.1.4 Specifications for Screws ..... 3-3
3.2 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY ..... 3-4
3.2.1 Changing the Printhead. ..... 3-5
3.2.2 Removing the Printer Case ..... 3-6
3.2.2.1 Removing the Front Case ..... 3-6
3.2.2.2 Removing the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER ..... 3-6
3.2.3 Removing the Circuit Boards ..... 3-7
3.2.3.1 Removing the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN Board) ..... 3-7
3.2.3.2 Removing the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSB/PSE Board) ..... 3-8
3.2.3.3 Removing the BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062 PNL Board) ..... 3-8
3.2.4 Removing the PRINTER MECHANISM. ..... 3-9
3.2.5 Disassembling the PRINTER MECHANISM ..... 3-10
3.2.5.1 Removing the Motor, CR ..... 3-10
3.2.5.2 Removing the Motor, PF ..... 3-11
3.2.5.3 Removing the CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (,REAR) ..... 3-11
3.2.5.4 Removing the Carriage ..... 3-12
3.2.5.5 Removing the PLATEN ..... 3-13
3.2.5.6 Removing and Disassembling the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT ..... 3-14
3.2.5.7 Removing and Disassembling the PAPER GUIDE Assembly (Including the DETECTOR ASSY., RE-
LEASE) ..... 3-15
3.2.5.8 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., HP ..... 3-17
3.2.5.9 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, REAR.. ..... 3-17
3.2.5.11 Removing the DETEC
3.2.5.12 Disassembling the TRA
3.2.5.13 Arranging the Cables ..... 3-18 ..... 3-20

## LIST OF FIGURES

| Figure 3-1. | Flowchart for Disassembling the Printer. | 3-4 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Figure 3.2. | Removing the Printer Cover and the Paper Eject Cover $\qquad$ | 3-5 |
| Figure 3.3. | Removing the Printhea | 3-5 |
| Figure 3.4. | Removing the HOUSING, FRO | 3-6 |
| Figure 3.5. | Removing the Cover for the Optional <br> Interface Card $\qquad$ | 3-6 |
| Figure 3.6. | Removing the SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD........... | 7 |
| Figure 3-7. | Removing the BOARD ASSY., M | 3-7 |
| Figure 3.8. | Removing the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY.... | 3-8 |
| Figure 3.9. | Removing the BOARD ASSY., PANEL. | 3-9 |
| Figure 3-10. | Removing the PRINTER MECHANISM. | 3-9 |
| Figure 3-1 1. | Removing the MOTOR, CR. | 3-10 |
| Figure 3-12. | Removing the MOTOR, | 11 |
| Figure 3.13. | Removing the CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (,REAR) | 3-11 |
| Figure 3-14. | Removing the Carriage Unit. | 3-12 |
| Figure 3.15. | Removing the PLATEN. | 3-13 |
| Figure 3.16. | LEVER, RELEASE Insertion Positionin | 3-14 |
| Figure 3-17. | Disassembling the FRAME, MAIN, RIG | 3-14 |
| Figure 3-18. | Direction for Inserting the PLAIN WASHER. | 3-15 |
| Figure 3.19. | Removing the PAPER GUIDE. | 3-15 |
| Figure 3.20. | Removing the PAPER GUIDE ASSY., SUPPORT ...... | 3-16 |
| Figure 3-21. | Removing the LEVER ASSY., PF | 3-16 |
| Figure 3.22. | How to Insert the SHAFT, RELEASE. | 3-16 |
| Figure 3.23. | Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., HP........................ | 3-17 |
| Figure 3.24. | Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, REAR.. | 3-18 |
| Figure 3.25. | Removing the DETECTOR ASSy., PE, FRONT.. | 3-18 |
| Figure 3.26. | Removing the DETECTOR ASSy., PLATEN.. | 3-19 |
| Figure 3.27. | Disassembling the TRACTOR ASSY. | 3-19 |
| Figure 3-28. | Arranging the Cables.. ................. | 3-20 |

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 3.1. List of Recommended Tools.. ..................................................3-1
Table 3.2. Equipment Required for Maintenance.. ...............................3-1
Table 3.3. Inspection Checklist for Repaired Printer........................ 3-2
Table 3.4. Abbreviations Used for Screws.. ............................................3-3
Table 3.5. Types of Screws and Abbreviations.. .................................. 3-3

### 3.1 OVERVIEW

This section describes the various points to note when disassembling and assembling the printer.

### 3.1.1 Precautions for Disassembling the Printer

Follow the precautions below when disassembling the printer.

## WARNING

Before disassembling, assembling, or adjusting the printer, disconnect the power supply cable from the external AC power socket. Failure to do so risks personal injury. The power supply switch for the printer is wired into the secondary circuitry. As a result, the printer still remains live with current flowing even when this switch is off.

## CAUTION

To maintain efficient printer operation, use only the re:ommended tools for maintenance work. Use only the recommended lubricants and adhesives (se Chapter (6)).
Adjust the printer only in the manner described in this mmanual.

### 3.1.2 Tools

Tables 3-1 and 3-2 list the various recommended tools that are needed when disassembling, assembling, or adjusting the printer. Use only tools that meet these specifications.

Table 3-1. List of Recommended Tools

| Tool | Part No. |
| :--- | :---: |
| Round-nose pliers | B740400100 |
| Nippers | 8740500100 |
| Tweezers | B741000100 |
| Soldering iron | B740200100 |
| E-ring holder \# 2.5 | 8740800400 |
| E-ring holder \# 5 | 8740800700 |
| E-ring holder \# 6 | 8740800800 |
| Phillips screwdriver No. 2 | B743800200 |
| Normal screwdriver | B743000100 |
| Box driver (7 mm across) | B741700200 |
| Thickness gauge $(\mathbf{0 . 4 4} \mathbf{~ m m ) ~}$ | - |
| Thickness gauge ( $\mathbf{( 0 . 4 7} \mathrm{mm}$ ) | - |

## NOTE

All tools are commercially available.

Table 3-2. Equipment Required for Maintenance

| Description | Specification |
| :--- | :---: |
| Multimeter <br> Oscilloscope | 20 MHz |

REV.-A

### 3.1.3 Service Checks After Repair

When printer components are to be sent back to the customer after servicing, use the checklist shown in Table 33 to note the current state of the components. This checklist provides a record to make servicing and shipping more efficient.

Table 3-3. Inspection Checklist for Repaired Printer

| Category | Component | Item to Check | Is Check Required? |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Printer features | Printhead | Are any wires broken? | $\square$ Checked, CI Not necessary |
|  |  | Are any wires worn out? | Cl Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  | Carriage mechanism | Does the carriage move smoothly? <br> $\square$ Movement noisy, $\square$ Mechanism dirty, <br> Cl Mechanism oily | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  |  | Is the carriage motor running at the correct temperature and not overheating? <br> $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  | Paper advance mechanism | Is the paper advancing smoothly? Movement noisy, $\square$ Mechanism dirty, <br> Mechanism oily | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  |  | Is the paper advance motor running at the correct temperature and not overheating? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  | Paper path | Is the type of paper in the printer feeding smoothly? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  |  | Is the tractor feeding the paper correctly? | -i Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  |  | Is the paper path clear of all obstructions? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  |  | Is the platen free of damage? | $\square$ Checked, •i Not necessary |
|  | Ribbon mask | Is the ribbon mask free of distortion? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  | Self-print test | Was the self-print test successful? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  | On-line test | Was the on-line test successful? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
| Adjustment | Printhead | Is the platen gap adjusted correctly? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  | Printing | Is the bidirectional print position adjusted correctly? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  | DIP switch settings | Have DIP switches been reset to their factory shipment settings? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
| System upgrade | ROM version | The ROM version is XXX. | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
| Shipment |  | Has the ribbon been removed? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |
|  |  | Have all relevant parts been included in the shipment? | $\square$ Checked, $\square$ Not necessary |

### 3.1.4 Specifications for Screws

In the following sections, abbreviations are used for small parts, such as screws and washers. Tables 3-4 and 3-5 list these abbreviations.

Table 3-4. Abbreviations Used for Screws

| Abbreviation | Part Name |
| :--- | :--- |
| $\operatorname{CBS}(\mathrm{C})$ | Cross-recessed Bind head Cone point S tight screw |
| CBB(C) | Cross-recessed Bind head Cone point B tight screw |
| CB | Cross-recessed Bind head screw |
| CBS(0) | Cross-recessed Bind head S tight with screw with Outside toothed lock washer |

Table 3-5. Types of Screws and Abbreviations

| Head |  | Body | Washer (assembled) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Top | Side |  |  |
| 1.Cross-recessed head <br> 2.Slotted head | 1 .Bind <br> (with Notch) <br> 2.Pan <br> 3.Cup <br> 4. Truss | 1. Normal $\qquad$ <br> 2. S -tight $\qquad$ <br> 3. B-tight Mruaration <br> 4. Tapping $\qquad$ | 1 .Plain washer <br> 2.Outside toothed lock washer <br> 3. Spring washer 3 |

REV.-A

### 3.2 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

This section describes the procedures for disassembling and assembling the main components of the printer. When the procedure for installing a component into the printer is simply the reverse of the procedure for removing the component, no description of how to install the component is given.

Any points of special concern when assembling or adjusting a component part are given after the description of the procedure. It is important to take note of these points.

## CAUTION

Before disassembling any part of the printer, note the warnings in Section 3.1.
Before disassembling any part of the printer, remove the paper and the ink ribbon.

Disassembly includes the following five procedures:

1. Removing the printhead
2. Removing the case
3. Removing the electrical circuits
4. Removing the printer mechanism
5. Disassembling the printer mechanism

Diagrams in the appendix show how the components fit together. Refer to them as necessary.


Figure 3-1. Flowchart for Disassembling the Printer

### 3.2.1 Changing the Printhead

1. Remove the FRAME ASSY., SHEET GUIDE.
2. Remove the COVER ASSY., EJECT.


Figure 3-2. Removing the FRAME ASSY., SHEET GUIDE and the COVER ASSY., EJECT
3. Release the two levers that hold the printhead to the carriage. Lift out the printhead.
4. Remove the two FFCs (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (,REAR)) from the printhead.


Figure 3-3. Removing the Printhead

REV.-B

### 3.2.2 Removing the Printer Case

This section describes how to remove the front case and HOUSING ASSY., UPPER.

### 3.2.2.1 Removing the HOUSING, FRONT

1. Remove the COVER ASSY., PRINTER, FRONT.
2. Remove the HOUSING, FRONT.
3. Use a screwdriver to release the clips that hold the front case to the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER. Open the HOUSING, FRONT. Remove connector CN 1 on the BOARD ASSY., PANEL (CO62 PNL). Remove the HOUSING, FRONT.


Figure 3-4. Removing the HOUSING, FRONT

### 3.2.2.2 Removing the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER

1. Remove the COVER ASSY., PRINTER, FRONT, the COVER ASSY., EJECT, the TRACTOR ASSY, and the KNOB.
2. Remove the two $\operatorname{CBS}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10)$ screws that hold the optional interface card cover. Remove the cover.


Figure 3-5. Removing the COVER, CONNECTOR, UPPER for the Optional Interface Card
3. Remove the HOUSING, FRONT (see Section 3.2.2.1).
4. Remove the two $\operatorname{CBB}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 4 \times 25)$ screws that hold the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER to the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER.
5. Depress the two clips that hold the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER to the FRAME ASSY., SHEET GUIDE. Remove the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER.

### 3.2.3 Removing the Circuit Boards

This section describes how to remove the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (CO62 MAIN board), the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (CO62 PSB/PSE board) and the BOARD ASSY., PANEL (CO62 PNL board).

### 3.2.3.1 Removing the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN Board)

1. Remove the HOUSING ASSY.,UPPER (see Section 3.2.2.2).
2. Remove the $\mathrm{CB}(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 6$ ) screws that hold the HOLDING PLATE, FFC to the SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD. Remove the HOLDING PLATE, FFC.
3. Disconnect the FFC (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (, REAR)) removing the cables for the CN6 and CN7 connectors on the main board.
4. Remove the three CBB (C) ( $\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10$ ) screws that hold the SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD to the BOARD ASSY., MAIN. Remove the SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD.


Figure 3-6. Removing the SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD
5. Remove the CBB (M4 X 10) screw that holds the SHIELD PLATE, RIGHT to the BOARD ASSY., MAIN. Remove the CBB(C) (M4 X 14) screw that holds it to the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER. Remove the SHIELD PLATE, RIGHT.
6. Remove the cables for the following BOARD ASSY., MAIN connectors: CN3 (brown 12-pin), CN4 (white 5-pin), CN5 (white 6-pin), CN8 (yellow 2-pin), CN9 (black 2-pin), CN 10 (blue 2-pin), CN 11 (white 2-pin), and CN 12 (red 2-pin).
7. Remove the three $\operatorname{CBB}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10)$ screws and $\mathrm{CB}(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 8)$ screws that hold the BOARD ASSY., MAIN to the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER. Remove the BOARD ASSY., MAIN.


Figure 3-7. Removing the BOARD ASSY., MAIN

## Point to Note for Assembly and Adjustment

 After replacing the BOARD ASSY., MAIN, you must adjust the bidirectional print position again to ensure bidirectional printing is correctly aligned (see Section 4.2).3.2.3.2 Removing the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSB/PSE Board)

1. Remove the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER (see Section 3.2.2.2).
2. Remove the cable for connector CN 13 from the BOARD ASSY., MAIN.
3. Remove the cable for connector CN1 from the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY.
4. Remove the four $\operatorname{CBB}(C)(M 3 X 10)$ screws and the $C B$ ( $M 3 \times 8$ ) screws that hold the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY to the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER. Remove the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY.

( 80 column)
(136 column)
Figure 3-6. Removing the BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY

### 3.2.3.3 Removing the BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062 PNL Board)

1. Remove the HOUSING, FRONT (see Section 3.2.2.1).
2. Remove the $10 \mathrm{CBB}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10)$ screws that hold the BOARD ASSY.,PANEL to the HOUSING, FRONT. Remove the BOARD ASSY., PANEL.


Figure 3-9. Removing the BOARD ASSY., PANEL

### 3.2.4 Removing the PRINTER MECHANISM

1. Remove the HOUSING ASSY., UPPER (see Section 3.2.2.2).
2. Remove the CB ( $\mathbf{M} 3 \times 6$ ) screws that attach the HOLDING PLATE., FFC to the SHIELD PLATE, MAIN BOARD. Remove the HOLDING PLATE,FFC.
3. Disconnect the 2 FFCs(CABLE, HEAD, FRONT(,REAR)) from the CN6 and CN7 connectors on the BORAD ASSY., MAIN. Remove the cables for the following BOARD ASSY., MAIN connectors: CN3 (brown 12-pin), CN4 (white 5-pin), CN5 (white g-pin), CN8 (yellow 2-pin), CN9 (black 2-pin), CN10 (blue 2-pin), CN 11 (white 2-pin) and CN 12 (red 2-pin).
4. Remove the CBB(C) ( $M 4 \times 10$ ) screw that holds the SHIELD PLATE., RIGHT to the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (see Figure 3-6). Remove the $\operatorname{CBB}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 4 \times 14)$ screws that hold it to the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER. Remove the SHIELD PLATE., RIGHT.
5. Remove the three CBB(C) (M4×14) screws that hold the PRINTER MECHANISM to the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM.


Figure 3-10. Removing the PRINTER MECHANISM

Point to Note for Assembly and Adjustment
After replacing the PRINTER MECHANISM, you must adjust the bidirectional print position to ensure bidirectional printing is correctly aligned (see Section 4.2).

### 3.2.5 Disassembling the PRINTER MECHANISM

This section describes how to disassemble the main components of the PRINTER MECHANISM.

### 3.2.5.1 Removing the MOTOR, CR

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the printer spring ( 778 gm ) from the base frame and the MOTOR, CR frame.
3. Remove the TIMING BELT from the BELT PULLEY.
4. Remove the MOTOR, CR frame from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER.
5. Remove the two CBS $(O)$ ( $M 3 \times 6$ ) screws that hold the MOTOR, CR to the FRAME ASSY., CR, MOTOR. Remove the MOTOR, CR


Figure 3-11. Removing the MOTOR, CR

## Points to Note for Assembly and Adjustment

See Section 3.2.5.13 for details on arranging and positioning the motor cable.
After removing the MOTOR, CR from the FRAME ASSY., CR, MOTOR, you must adjust the MOTOR, CR backlash (see Section 4.1 .1). You also must adjust the bidirectional print position to ensure bidirectional printing is correctly aligned (see Section 4.2).

### 3.2.5.2 Removing the MOTOR, PF

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the COMPRESSION SPRING, 200 that holds the platen shaft.
3. Release the two clips holding the MOTOR, PF to the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT.
4. Remove the MOTOR, PF from the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT.


Figure 3-12. Removing the MOTOR, PF

## Point to Note for Assembly

See Section 3.2.5.13 for details on arranging and positioning the motor cable.

### 3.2.5.3 Removing the FFC (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (,REAR))

1. Remove the printhead (see Section 3.2.1).
2. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
3. Remove the FFC from the clips that hold it along the rear side of the PRINTER MECHANISM. Make sure that the FFC is free.
4. Remove the FFC from clip on the HOLDING PLATE, FFC at the rear of the PRINTER MECHANISM.
5. Remove the four clips that hold the HOLDING PLATE, FFC to the base frame. Remove the FFC together with the HOLDING PLATE, FFC.


Figure 3-13. Removing the FFC Cable

## Point to Note for Assembly

See Section 3.2.5.13 for details on arranging and positioning the FFC.

REV.-B

### 3.2.5.4 Removing the Carriage

. Remove the FFC (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (,REAR)) (see Section 3.2.5.3).
2. Remove the TIMING BELT from the carriage.
3. Use the box driver to rotate and free the adjusting bushing. This bushing holds the SHAFT, CR, GUIDE to the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT. Remove the bushing.
4. Remove the carriage unit together with the SHAFT, CR, GUIDE by pulling the SHAFT, CR, GUIDE a little to the right.


Figure 3-14. Removing the Carriage Unit

## Point to Note for Assembly and Adjustment

After removing or rotating the adjusting bushing, you must adjust the platen gap (see Section 4.1.2).

### 3.2.5.5 Removing the PLATEN

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the two $\operatorname{CBP}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10)$ screws that hold the COVER, PLATEN, LOWER to the left and FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT. Remove the COVER, PLATEN, LOWER.
3. Remove the COMPRESSION SPRING, 200 that holds the platen shaft (see Section 3.2.5.2, step 2).
4. Set the head LEVER, G, ADJUST to the most forward position.
5. Remove the two clips that hold the LEVER, RELEASE to the platen shaft. Remove the LEVER, RELEASE from the platen shaft.
6. Using tweezers, rotate the bushing ( 8 mm ) that holds the platen to the frame, main, left. Remove this bushing, along with the ground spring.
7. Using tweezers, rotate the bushing ( 8 mm ) that holds the platen to the frame, main, right. Remove the platen by lifting it up toward the right.


Figure 3-15. Removing the PLATEN

## Point to Note for Assembly

When inserting the LEVER, RELEASE onto the platen shaft, mesh the LEVER, RELEASE with the mechanism correctly by positioning it at the mark on the auxiliary release shaft.


Figure 3-16. LEVER, RELEASE Insertion Positioning

### 3.2.5.6 Removing and Disassembling the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the PLATEN from the PRINTER MECHANISM (see Section 3.2.5.5).
3. Remove the MOTOR, CR from the FRAME, MAIN, BASE (see Section 3.2.5.1).
4. Remove the two CBS(C)(P) (M3 X 10) screws that hold the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT to the FRAME, MAIN, BASE. Remove the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT from the FRAME, MAIN, BASE.
5. Remove the following items from the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT in the specified order: MOTOR, PF (see Section 3.2.5.2), CAM, CLUTCH, TRACTOR, COMBINATION GEAR, 8.5.30, SPUR GEAR, PLAIN WASHER, COMPRESSION SPRING 200, and SPUR GEAR, 16.


Figure 3-17. Disassembling the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT

Point to Note for Assembly
When installing the PLAIN WASHER, insert it from the front in the direction indicated by the mark.


Figure 3-18. Direction for Inserting the PLAIN WASHER
3.2.5.7 Removing and Disassembling the PAPER GUIDE (Including the DETECTOR ASSY., HP)

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the PLATEN from the PRINTER MECHANISM (see Section 3.2.5.5).
3. Remove the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT from the FRAME, MAIN, BASE (see Section 3.2.5.6).
4. Remove the three springs ( 32 gm ) from the lower side of the PRINTER MECHANISM (These springs join the PAPER GUIDE support to the FRAME, MAIN, BASE.)
5. While holding open the clips that secure the PAPER GUIDE to the FRAME, MAIN, BASE, slide the PAPER GUIDE to the left. Remove the PAPER GUIDE.


Figure 3-19. Removing the PAPER GUIDE
6. Open the clips that hold the SPUR GEAR, 18 to the ROLLER ASSY., PF, DRIVE. Remove the SPUR GEAR, 18 from the ROLLER ASSY., PF, DRIVE.
7. Remove the ROLLER ASSY., PF, DRIVE from the PAPER GUIDE.
8. Slide the PAPER GUIDE support to the right. Remove the PAPER GUIDE support from the PAPER GUIDE.


Figure 3-20. Removing the PAPER GUIDE ASSY., SUPPORT
9. While holding down the three PF lever assemblies, pull out and remove the release shaft. Remove the PF lever assemblies and the compression spring ( 1300 gm ) from the paper guide.
10. While holding open the clips that secure the DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE to the PAPER GUIDE, remove the DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE.


Figure 3-21. Removing the LEVER ASSY., PF

Point to Note for Assembly
Insert the SHAFT, RELEASE in the PAPER GUIDE in the way shown in the diagram below.


Figure 3-22. How to Insert the SHAFT, RELEASE

### 3.2.5.8 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., HP

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the clips from the rear side of the FRAME, MAIN, BASE that hold the DETECTOR ASSY., HP. Remove the DETECTOR ASSY., HP from the rear of the FRAME, MAIN, BASE.


Figure 3-23. Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., HP

### 3.2.5.9 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, REAR

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the two $\operatorname{CBP}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10)$ screws that hold the COVER, PLATEN, LOWER to the frame. Remove the COVER, PLATEN, LOWER.
3. Remove the clips that hold the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, REAR in the PAPER GUIDE. Remove the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, REAR


Figure 3-24. Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, REAR

### 3.2.5.10 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, FRONT

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Open the clips that hold the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, FRONT to the FRAME, MAIN, BASE. Remove the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, FRONT.


Figure 3-25. Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PE, FRONT

### 3.2.5.11 Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PLATEN

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the clips that hold DETECTOR ASSY., PLATEN to the FRAME, MAIN, LEFT. Remove the DETECTOR ASS., PLATEN.


Figure 3-26. Removing the DETECTOR ASSY., PLATEN

### 3.2.5.12 Disassembling the TRACTOR ASSY.

1. Remove the TRACTOR ASSY. from the printer.
2. Remove the SPUR GEAR, 17 from the SHAFT, TRACTOR.
3. Remove the FRAME, TRACTOR, RIGHT from the SHAFTT,TRACTOR and the SHAFT, TRACTOR, GUIDE.
4. Remove RETAINING RING from the SHAFT, TRACTOR.
5. Remove the TRACTOR ASSEMBLY (RIGHT), the PAPER SUPPORT unit, and the TRACTOR ASSEMBLY (LEFT) from the SHAFT, TRACTOR and SHAFT, TRACTOR, GUIDE.


Figure 3-27. Disassembling the TRACTOR ASSY.

### 3.2.5.13 Arranging the Cables

Figure 3-28 shows how the cables are arranged for the PRINTER MECHANISM. When assembling the printer, make sure that the cables are laid out as shown in this figure.


Figure 3-28. Arranging the Cables

## CHAPTER 4 <br> ADJUSTMENTS

4.1 ADJUSTING THE PRINTER MECHANISM ..... 4-1
4.1.1 MOTOR, CR Backlash Adjustment. ..... 4-1
4.1.2 Platen Gap Adjustment ..... 4-2
4.2 BIDIRECTIONAL PRINT POSITION ADJUSTMENT. ..... 4-4
4.2.1 Overview of Bidirectional Print Position Adjustment ..... 4-4
4.2.2 Bidirectional Print Position Adjustment Procedure ..... 4-4
4.3 CIRCUIT ADJUSTMENT ..... 4-6
4.3.1 Adjustment Process ..... 4-6

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 4.1. MOTOR, CR Backlash Adjustment ..................................... 4-2
Figure 4.2. Removing the RIBBON MASK .............................................. 4-2
Figure 4.3. The Adjusting Bushing............................................................... 4-3
Figure 4.4. Platen Gap .....................................................................................4-4

### 4.1 ADJUSTING THE PRINTER MECHANISM

This section describes the various adjustments you may need to make to the PRINTER MECHANISM.

### 4.1.1 MOTOR, CR Backlash Adjustment

In the MOTOR, CR backlash adjustment, the pinion gear of the MOTOR, CR is meshed smoothly with the BELT PULLEY cog. If the pinion gear is poorly aligned, printer operation becomes noisy, and the accuracy of character alignment during printing suffers.

1. Remove the MOTOR, CR, along with the FRAME ASSY., CR, MOTOR, from the PRINTER MECHANISM (see Section 3.2.5.1).
2. Loosen the two $\operatorname{CBS}(O)(M 3 \times 6)$ screws that hold the MOTOR, $C R$ to the FRAME ASSY., CR, MOTOR.
3. Check the alignment of the MOTOR, CR pinion gear with the BELT PULLEY cog. Move the MOTOR, CR until you judge that there is a gap of about $0.05-0.15 \mathrm{~mm}$ between the two. Tighten the two CBS(O) (M3 X 6) screws.


Figure 4-I. MOTOR, CR Backlash Adjustment

REV.-B

### 4.1.2 Platen Gap Adjustment

If you have rotated or reassembled the SHAFT, CR, GUIDE or the adjusting bushing, or if printing is abnormal, you must adjust the gap between the PLATEN and the printhead.

1. Remove the PRINTER MECHANISM from the HOUSING ASSY., LOWER (see Section 3.2.4).
2. Remove the printhead from the carriage (see Section 3.2.1).
3. Use tweezers to remove the RIBBON MASK from the carriage.


Figure 4-2. Removing the RIBBON MASK
4. Remount the printhead on the carriage.
5. Set the paper-thickness LEVER, G, ADJUST to position 0 (the second step position).
6. Move the LEVER, RELEASE back to the friction setting.
7. Move the carriage until the edge of the printhead is at the 5 th column print position.
8. Use the box driver ( 7 mm ) to rotate the adjusting bushing on the frame, main, left of the printer mechanism. (There is one on each side of the printer mechanism.)


Figure 4-3. The Adjusting Bushing
9. Rotate the adjusting bushing until the platen gap is large enough for a thickness gauge of 0.44 mm thickness but too narrow for one of 0.47 mm thickness.


Figure 4-4. Platen Gap
10. Move the carriage until the edge of the printhead is at the 75 th column print position.

1 1. Use the box driver ( 7 mm ) to rotate the adjusting bushing on the FRAME, MAIN, RIGHT of the PRINTER MECHANISM.
12. Rotate the adjusting bushing until the platen gap is large enough for a thickness gauge of 0.44 mm thickness but too narrow for one of 0.47 mm thickness.
13. Move the printhead back again so that the edge of the printhead is at the 5 th column print position. Check the platen gap again with the thickness gauge. It should still be large enough for a thickness gauge of 0.44 mm thickness but too narrow for one of 0.47 mm thickness. If this is not the case, go back to step 8 .
14. Center the carriage. Check the platen gap again with the thickness gauge. It should still be large enough for a thickness gauge of 0.44 mm thickness but too narrow for one of 0.47 mm thickness. If this is not the case, go back to step 8.
15. Remove the printhead, install the RIBBON MASK and then replace the printhead.

REV.-B

### 4.2 BIDIRECTIONAL PRINT POSITION ADJUSTMENT

This section describes how to adjust the bidirectional print position to ensure correct printing alignment.

### 4.2.1 Overview of Bidirectional Print Position Adjustment

This printer prints characters when the carriage is moving in either direction (i.e., from left to right or from right to left).

Adjustment is necessary to ensure that the printing of characters in one direction is properly aligned with the printing of characters in the opposite direction. For example, if the print position is out of alignment, printing of a vertical line shows staggering 'because of the skew effect.

It is important to readjust the bidirectional print position if anything has been done to the gear arrangement that might affect this printing alignment. By making the timing lag a fraction during printing while the carriage moves from right to the left, it is possible to line up the printing done in this direction so that it will match the printing done in the left to right direction. This procedure to alter the timing is called bidirectional print position adjustment.

The degree of bidirectional printing skew differs, depending on the unique characteristics of each PRINTER MECHANISM. For this reason, there is no standard skew correction value that can be applied to each printer. The unique skew correction value for each printer has to be written to EEPROM on the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (CO62 MAIN BOARD).

Whenever the PRINTER MECHANISM, or the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (CO62 MAIN BOARD) itself, is changed during servicing, the bidirectional print position must be readjusted and a new bidirectional skew correction value must be written to EEPROM.

### 4.2.2 Bidirectional Print Position Adjustment Procedure

Initial operation
Before performing the bidirectional alignment adjustment, complete the initial operation below:
. Position the LEVER, G, ADJUST at position O. . Verify that the DIP switch I-6 is on).
. Verify that the DIP switch setting for country is U.S. (DIP switches I-I, I-2, I-3 are on).

* Load paper.
* Feed at least 10 lines.
. Turn the printer off.

NOTE: The printer enters unidirectional printing mode automatically from the top of form to the line 10 position on the paper, because this improves paper-feed accuracy. Therefore, you must perform the bidirectional alignment adjustment after 10 lines or more have been fed.

Adjustment operation

The alignment procedure is as follows:

1. Turn the printer power on while pressing the ALT, LF/FF, and LOAD/EJECT buttons.
2. The printer enters draft mode and prints the reference value and " $\mid$ " characters for 4 lines.

Are the characters aligned vertically? NO $\rightarrow$ GO TO STEP 3.
YES $\rightarrow$ GO TO STEP 4.
3. Referring the odd-numbered lines (1st and 3rd), adjust the even-numbered lines (2nd and 4th).

* If the even-numbered lines are shifted to the right:
$\rightarrow$ Press the LOAD/EJECT button once while pressing the ALT button. (The reference value increases
+1 and even lines shift to the left.)
- If the even-numbered lines are shifted to the left:
$\rightarrow$ Press the LF/FF button once while pressing the ALT button. (The reference value decreases - 1 and even lines shift to the right.)

4. Press the ALT, LF/FF, and LOAD/EJECT buttons at the same time.
5. The printer enters LQ mode, and the printer prints the reference value and the " $\mid$ " characters for 4 lines.

Are the characters aligned vertically? NO $\rightarrow$ GO TO STEP 6.

$$
\text { YES } \rightarrow \text { GO TO STEP } 7 .
$$

6. Referring to the odd-numbered lines (1st and 3rd), adjust the even-numbered lines (2nd and 4th).

- If the even-numbered lines are shifted to the right:
$\rightarrow$ Press the LOAD/EJECT button once while pressing the ALT button. (The reference value increases +1 and even lines shift to the left.)
- If the even-numbered lines are shifted to the left:
$\rightarrow$ Press the LF/FF button once while pressing the ALT button. (The reference value decreases -1 and even lines shift to the right.)

7. Turn printer power off.

REV.-B

### 4.3 CIRCUIT ADJUSTMENT

The BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN BOARD) contains variable resistor VR1, which is used for balancing the circuitry. When any of the following parts are replaced, the circuitry must be balanced again by adjusting this variable resistance:

R14, R15, R13, C8, and VR1

If the circuitry is not correctly balanced in this way, the CPU A/D converter fails to function normally and printer operation is affected.

### 4.3.1 Adjustment Process

Attach a digital multimeter to the check terminal TP2 (Vref voltage) on the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (CO62 MAIN BOARD). Turn on printer power and turn variable resistor VR1 until a reading of 4.741 V is obtained.

## CHAPTER 5 TROUBLESHOOTING

5.1 OVERVIEW ..... 5-1
5.2 REPAIR BY UNIT REPLACEMENT. ..... 5-2
5.3 REPAIR OF THE BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN BOARD) ..... 5-14
5.4 REPAIR OF THE PRINTER MECHANISM ..... 5-17

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 5-1. Troubleshooting Procedure ..... 5-1
Figure 5-2. Printhead Resistance ..... 5-8
LIST OF TABLES
Table 5-1. Motor and Printhead Coil Resistance. ..... 5-1
Table 5-2. Error Codes ..... 5-1
Table 5-3. Symptoms and Reference Pages. ..... 5-2
Table 5-4. Repair of a Problem in the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN BOARD) ..... 5-14
Table 5-5. Repair of the PRINTER MECHANISM. ..... 5-17

### 5.1 OVERVIEW

Problems in the printer may exhibit a variety of symptoms, which can complicate the task of troubleshooting, unless you follow the procedure shown in the flowchart below.


Figure 5-1. Troubleshooting Procedure

The following tables provide troubleshooting information.

Table 5-1. Motor and Printhead Coil Resistance

| Part | Specifications |
| :--- | :--- |
| MOTOR, CR | , Coil resistance 19.5 ohms $+/-7 \%$ at 25 degrees C (77 degrees F ) |
| MOTOR, PF | Coil resistance $79.0+/-5$ ohms at 25 degrees C (77 degrees F) |
| Printhead | Coil resistance $45.5+/-3.2$ ohms at 25 degrees C (77 degrees F ) |

Table 5-2. Error Codes

| Error Display | Error | Cause |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Buzzer beeps 3 times for <br> 0.1 second, with 0. I-sec- <br> ond intervals. | Paper-out error | . Printer is out of paper. <br> . DETECTOR ASSY., PE, FRONT (,REAR) |
| Buzzer beeps 5 times for <br> 0.5 second, with $0.5-$ sec- <br> ond intervals. | Carriage error | . MOTOR, CR malfunction. <br> - Carriage mechanism malfunction. <br> . MOTOR, CR driver current malfunction. |

REV.-B

### 5.2 REPAIR BY UNIT REPLACEMENT

For most problems, it is sufficient for you to determine the difficulty to the unit level. Refer to Table $5-3$, identify what the problem is, then perform the checks according to the corresponding flowchart.

Table 5-3. Symptoms and Reference Pages

| Symptom | Problem | See Page |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Printer fails to operate when <br> power is on. | . Carriage does not move. <br> . Control panel indicator lamp does not light. | $5-3$ |
| Carriage operation is abnor- <br> mal. | . Carriage moves away from home position at power <br> on. <br> . The carriage returns to the home position correctly, <br> but the printer then fails to enter the READY mode. | $5-4$ |
| Printing is faulty during self- <br> test, but carriage operation is <br> normal. | . No printing at all. <br> . Faulty printing -some of the dots are not printed. | $5 \mathbf{5 - 5}$ |
| Paper feeding is abnormal. | . No paper is fed. <br> . Regular paper feed, but with variations in the separa- <br> tions between lines. | $5-9$ |
| Control panel operation is <br> abnormal. | . When the LF switch is activated, no paper is fed. | $5-12$ |
| Printing of data sent by the <br> host computer is faulty. | . Carriage operates normally at power on, and self-test <br> is executed correctly. | $5-13$ |

The repair procedure flowcharts are represented using the following symbols:

(1) Printer Fails to Operate when Power is On


REV.-B
(2) Carriage Operation is Abnormal

(3) Printing is Faulty During Self-Test, but Carriage Operation is Normal




$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (17) (15) (13) (11) (9) (7) (5) (3) (1) } \\
& \text { TEMP1 \#4 \#8 } 116 \text { com. \#21\#13:5 } \\
& \text { 〈Terminal Assignment 〉 } \\
& \text { (14) (12) (10),(8) (6) (4) (2) } \\
& \text { Assignment > }
\end{aligned}
$$

Figure 5－2．Printhead Resistance
(4) Paper Feeding is Abnormal (but Printing is Normal)



NOTE : Perform bidirectional print alignment adjustment.

(5) Control Panel Operation is Abnormal

(6) Printing of Data Sent by the Host Computer is Faulty

NOTE: It is assumed here that the host computer is operating normally.


REV.-B

### 5.3 REPAIR OF THE MAIN BOARD

This section provides instructions for repairing the BOARD ASSY., MAIN when it is defective and describes various symptoms, likely causes, and checkpoints. Checkpoints refer to proper waveforms, resistance values, and other values to be checked to evaluate the operation of any component that might be bad. Check these values and take the appropriate action.

I


Table 5-4. Repair of a Problem in the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (Cont.)

| Problem | Symptom | Cause | Checkpoint | Solution |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| The printer does not operate at all. | The CPU does not operate. | Either ROM or RAM is defective. |  | Replace IC5E or IC6E. |
|  |  | The CPU is defective. | Check the oscillator signal at either pin 33 or pin 34 of the CPU. | If a signal is detected, replace IC 1 C . Otherwise, replace CR 1. |
| The carriage operates abnormally. | The carriage does not operate at all. | IC1C is defective. | Check the MOTOR, CR phase signal at pins $9,10,11$, and 12 of IC1C. | Replace IC 1 C . |
|  |  | IC2A is defective. | At IC2A, check the input signal for pin 90 and the output waveform for pin 100. | Replace IC2A. |
|  | Carriage operation is unstable (lack of torque). | IC2A is s defective. |  | Replace IC2A. |

REV.-B
Table 5-4. Repair of a Problem in the BOARD ASSY., MAIN (Cont.)


### 5.4 REPAIR OF THE PRINTER MECHANISM

For detailed procedures for replacing or adjusting parts, refer to Chapter 3, Disassembly and Assembly, and Chapter 4, Adjustment. If a problem or symptom recurs following an attempted repair, refer to Table 5-5 to try to find other potential causes.

Table 5-5. Repair of the PRINTER MECHANISM

| Problem | Symptom | Cause | Checkpoint | Solution |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| The MOTOR, CR fails to operate. | The MOTOR, CR completely fails to activate at power on. | Foreign substances are lodged in the gears or elsewhere in the mechanism. | Manually move the TIMING BELT to see if this causes the motor to rotate. | Remove any foreign substances. |
|  |  | The MOTOR, CR is defective. | Measure the coil resistance of the motor. The resistance should be about 19.5 ohms. | Replace the MOTOR, CR. |
| The carriage does not operate normally at power on (after the carriage has been manually centered prior to power on). | The MOTOR, CR rotates, but the carriage does not move. | The BELT PULLEY is defective. | Check for broken or worn pulley. | Replace the BELT PULLEY. |
|  |  | The TIMING BELT is defective. | Check that the TIMING BELT is correctly inserted into the bottom of the carriage. | Reinsert the TIMING BELT. |
|  |  |  | Check for a broken timing belt. | Replace the timing belt. |
|  | The carriage moves left slightly, then stops. | Carriage movement is not smooth. | Check whether the carriage moves smoothly when moved manually. | Clean and lubricate. <br> Replace the MOTOR, CR. |
|  | The carriage moves to the left or right end, then stops. | The DETECTOR ASSY., HP is defective. | Use a multimeter to check the DETECTOR ASSY., HP. | Replace the DE TECTOR ASSY., HP. |
| Self-test printing does not execute. | The carriage moves, but no printing is performed. | The printhead FFC (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (,REAR)) common wires are disconnected. | Check the common wires for the printhead FFC (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (,REAR) ). | Replace the FFC (CABLE, HEAD, FRONT (,REAR) ) |

Table 5-5. Repair of the PRINTER MECHANISM (Cont.)

| Problem | Symptom | Cause | Checkpoint | Solution |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Self-test printing is abnormal. | A particular dot fails to print. | The printhead is defective. | Measure the coil resistance of the printhead. The normal value is approximately 45.5 ohms. | Replace the printhead. |
|  |  |  | Check whether the dot wire is worn. | Replace the printhead. |
|  | The printing is too light, or the print density is not uniform. | The printhead is defective. | Check whether the tip of the dot wire is worn. | Replace the printhead. |
|  |  | The platen gap is not properly adjusted. | Set the gap LEVER, G, ADJUST to the second position, and check the gap between the tip of the printhead and the PLATEN. <br> The appropriate value is 0.46 mm . | Adjust the gap. Refer to Section 4.1.2, Platen Gap Adjustment. |
| Paper feeding is abnormal. | Printing is performed, but the paper is not fed, or is not fed uniformly. | Foreign substances are lodged in the paper path. | Perform a visual check of the paper path. | Remove any foreign substance. <br> . Remove any foreign substance. <br> . Replace the pa-per-feed reduction gear. <br> . Replace the plat en gear. |
|  |  | The MOTOR, PF is not driving the gear correctly. | Check that no foreign substance is lodged between the gears, and that the gears are not broken or worn. |  |
|  |  | The MOTOR, PF is defective. | Measure the coil resistance for the MOTOR, PF. <br> The approximate value should be 79 ohms. | Replace the MOTOR, PF. |

Table 5-5. Repair of the PRINTER MECHANISM (Cont.)

| Problem | Symptom | Cause | Checkpoint | Solution |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| The ribbon feed is <br> abnormal. | The ribbon is not <br> fed. | The ribbon car- <br> tridge is defective. | Dismount the rib- <br> bon cartridge, ro- <br> tate its knob manu- <br> ally, and check <br> whether the ribbon <br> feeds normally. | Replace the ribbon <br> cartridge. |

## CHAPTER 6 MAINTENANCE

6.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE ..... 6-1
6.2 LUBRICATION AND ADHESIVE APPLICATION ..... 6-1
LIST OF FIGURES
Figure 6-1. Correct Adhesive Application ..... 6-2
Figure 6-2. LQ-570 Lubrication Points ..... 6-3
Figure 6-3. LQ-1070 Lubrication Points ..... 6-4
LIST OF TABLES
Table 6-1. Lubricants and Adhesive ..... 6-1
Table 6-2. Lubrication Points ..... 6-2
Table 6-3. Adhesive Application Point ..... 6-2

### 6.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

Preventive maintenance includes regular cleaning of the case exterior (using denatured alcohol), as well as occasional vacuuming of the mechanism's interior to remove dust and paper debris. After cleaning the unit, check that it is adequately lubricated (as described in Section 6.2, below.) Before returning the printer to the customer, inspect the springs, paper-feed rollers, and basic operation.

## CAUTION

Disconnect the printer from the external AC power source before performing maintenance. Do not use thinner, trichloroethylene, or ketone-based solvents on the plastic components of the printer.

### 6.2 LUBRICATION AND ADHESIVE APPLICATION

EPSON recommends that the printer be lubricated at the points illustrated in Figure 6-2. Table 6-2 lists each point together with its recommended lubricant. The three recommended lubricants are EPSON $\mathrm{O}-2$, G-20, and G-26, all of which have been tested extensively and found to comply with the needs of this printer. (Table 6-I provides details about these lubricants.) Before applying a lubricant, be sure that the surface to be lubricated is clean. Do not apply too much lubricant, as this may damage related parts.

Adhesive application is necessary at the point described in Table 6-3. Figure 6-1 indicates the point at which adhesive must be applied following disassembly or replacement. EPSON recommends that Neji lock \#2 (G) adhesive be applied to the point illustrated. Avoid overflow to adjacent parts.

Table 6-1. Lubricants and Adhesive

| Type | Name | Quantity | Availability | Part No. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: | :--- |
| Oil | $\mathbf{0 - 2}$ |  |  |  |
| Grease | G-20 | $\mathbf{4 0} \mathbf{~ c c}$ | E | B710200001 |
| Grease | G-26 | $\mathbf{4 0} \mathrm{gm}$ | E | 8702000001 |
| Adhesive | Neji lock \#2 (G) | $\mathbf{4 0} \mathrm{gm}$ | E | 8702600001 |

E: EPSON-exclusive product

Table 6-2. Lubrication Points (Refer to Figure 6-2)

| Ref. No. | Lubrication Points | Lubricant |
| :---: | :--- | :---: |
| 1 | $1 / 4$ of the perimeter of the top edge of the gear ( $8.5 \mathrm{~mm}, 30 \mathrm{~mm}$ ) | G-26 |
| 2 | $1 / 3$ of the perimeter of the top edge of the gear ( 40 mm ) | G-26 |
| 3 | $1 / 3$ of the perimeter of the top edge of the platen gear | G-26 |
| 4 | Portion of carriage that contacts base frame | G-26 |
| 5 | Oil pad | o-2 |
| 6 | Portion of platen shaft that contacts ground spring | G-20 |
| 7 | Gear (40 mm) shaft | G-26 |
| 8 | Gear (8.5, 30 mm) shaft | G-26 |
| 9 | Ribbon-feed gear shafts | G-26 |
| 10 | Gear (1 1.5 mm) shaft | G-26 |
| 11 | Portion of paper guide that contacts gear (18 mm) | G-26 |
| 12 | Portion of paper guide that contacts sub paper guide | G-26 |
| 13 | Portion of release shaft that contacts paper guide | G-26 |
| 14 | Portion of paper tension roller shaft that contacts paper tension frame | G-26 |
| 15 | Portion of tractor shaft that contacts tractor frame (left) | G-26 |
| 16 | Tractor clutch cam | G-26 |

NOTE: Lubrication must be applied during the reassembly process.

Table 6-3. Adhesive Application Point (Refer to Figure S-I.)

| Adhesive Application Point | No. of Points |
| :---: | :---: |
| Portion where timing belt engages the <br> carriage | 1 |



Figure 6-I. Correct Adhesive Application


Figure 6-2. LQ-570 Lubrication Points


Figure 6-3. LQ-1 070 Lubrication Points

## APPENDIX

A. 1 CONNECTOR SUMMARY ..... A-1
A. 2 CIRCUIT DIAGRAMS ..... A-5
A. 3 CIRCUIT BOARD COMPONENT LAYOUT ..... A-12
A. 4 EXPLODED DIAGRAM ..... A-16
A. 5 CASE OUTLINE DRAWING ..... A-20
LIST OF FIGURES
Figure A-1. Cable Connections ..... A-1
Figure A-2. BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN BOARD) Circuit diagram (Annotated) ..... A-5
Figure A-3. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062PSB BOARD) Circuit DiagramA-6
Figure A-4. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSB BOARD) Circuit Diagram (Annotated) ..... A-7
Figure A-5. BOARD ASS., POWER SUPPLY (C082 PSB BOARD) Circuit Diagram ..... A-8
Figure A-6. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSE BOARD) Circuit Diagram (Annotated) ..... A-9
Figure A-7. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSE BOARD) Circuit Diagram ..... A-10
Figure A-8. BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062
PNL BOARD) Circuit Diagram ..... A-11
Figure A-9. BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062MAIN BOARD) Component LayoutA-12
Figure A-10. BOARD ASSY., (C062
PSB BOARD) Component Layout ..... A-13
Figure A-11. BOARD ASSY., POWER (C062
PSE BOARD) Component Layout ..... A-14
Figure A-12. BOARD ASSY., PANEL (C062 PNL BOARD) Component Layout ..... A-15
Figure A-13. LQ-570 Exploded Diagram ..... A-16
Figure A-14. LQ-1070 Exploded Diagram ..... A-17
Figure A-15. Model-5E10 Exploded Diagram ..... A-18
Figure A-16. Model-5E60 Exploded Diagram ..... A-19
Figure A-17. LQ-570 Case Outline Drawing. ..... A-22
Figure A-18. LQ-1070 Case Outline Drawing ..... A-23

## LIST OF TABLES

Table A-1. Board Connector Summary ..... A-2
Table A-2. CN2 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-3
Table A-3. CN3 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-3
Table A-4. CN4 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-3
Table A-5. CN5 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-3
Table A-6. CN6 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-3
Table A-7. CN7 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-8. CN8 BOARDASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-9. CN9 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-10. CN10 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-11. CN11 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-12. CN12 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-13. CN13 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) ..... A-4
Table A-14. Part No. Reference Table ..... A-20

## A. 1 CONNECTOR SUMMARY

Figure A-I illustrates the interconnection of the primary components. Table A-I summarizes the functions and sizes of the connectors.


Figure A-I. Cable Connections

REV.-B
Table A-I. Board Connector Summary

| Board | Connector | Function | Pins |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| BOARD ASSY., | CN1 | Parallel interface | 36 |
| MAIN (CO62 MAIN | CN2 | Optional interface card | 36 |
| BOARD) | Control panel | 12 |  |
|  | CN3 | MOTOR, CR | 5 |
|  | CN4 | MOTOR, PF | 5 |
|  | CN5 | Printhead | 17 |
|  | CN6 | Printhead | 15 |
|  | CN7 | DETECTOR ASSY., HP (HP sensor) | 2 |
|  | CN8 | DETECTOR ASSY., PE, REAR | 2 |
|  | CN9 | DETECTOR ASSY.,. PE, PRONT | 2 |
|  | CN10 | DETECTOR ASSY., PLATEN | 2 |
|  | CN11 | DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE | 2 |
| BOARD ASSY,., POWER SUP. | CN1 | DCpowerinputBOARD ASSY., (POWER SUPPLY: (CO62 PSB/PSE board) | 11 |
| PLY (C062 PSB/PSE BOARD) | CN2 | AC power input | 2 |
| BOARD ASSY., PANEL | CN 1 | DC power output (BOARD ASSY., MAIN): (CO62 MAIN board) | 11 |
| (CO62 PNL BOARD) |  | BOARD ASSY., MAIN (CO62 MAIN board) | 12 |

Table A-2. CN2 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (CO62 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | - | +5 | +5 VDC |
| 2 | - | +5 | +5 VDC |
| 3 | - | +5 | +5 VDC |
| 4 | - | +5 | +5 VDC |
| 5 | - | +5 | +5 VDC |
| 6 | - | +5 | +5 VDC |
| 7 | 0 | TXD | Transmit data |
| 8 | 0 | /READY | Ready to receive data |
| 9 | I | RXD | Receive data |
| 10 | - | NC | No connection |
| 11 | 0 | /RST | Reset |
| 12 | 0 | INH | Inhibit |
| 13 | I | /CMREQ | Command request |
| 14 | I | IWRRDY | Write ready |
| 15 | I | /RDREO | Read request |
| 16 | 0 | CWR | Write |
| 17 | 0 | /RD | Read |
| 18 | 0 | /CS | Chip select |
| 19 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 20 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 21 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 22 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 23 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 24 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 25 | 0 | A3 | Address bus bit 3 |
| 26 | 0 | A2 | Address bus bit 2 |
| 27 | 0 | A1 | Addres bus bit 1 |
| 28 | 0 | AO | Address bus bit 0 |
| 29 | I/O | D7 | Data bus bit 7 |
| 30 | I/O | D6 | Data bus bit 6 |
| 31 | I/O | D5 | Data bus bit 5 |
| 32 | I/O | D4 | Data bus bit 4 |
| 33 | I/O | D3 | Data bus bit 3 |
| 34 | I/O | D2 | Data bus bit 2 |
| 35 | I/O | D1 | Data bus bit 1 |
| 36 | I/O | DO | Data bus bit 0 |
|  |  |  |  |

Table A-4. CN4 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | O | CRA | MOTOR, CR phase A |
| 2 | 0 | CRB | MOTOR, CR phase B |
| 3 | 0 | CRC | MOTOR, CR phase C |
| 4 | 0 | CRD | MOTOR, CR phase D |
| 5 | 0 | CRCOM | MOTOR, CR common |

Table A-5. CN5 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) I

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 0 | PFA | MOTOR, PF phase A |
| 2 | 0 | PFB | MOTOR, PF phase B |
| 3 | 0 | PFC | MOTOR, PF phase C |
| 4 | 0 | PFD | MOTOR, PF phase D |
| 5 | 0 | PFCOM | MOTOR, PF common |
| 6 | 0 | PFCOM | MOTOR, PF common |

Table A-6. CN6 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN) I

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 0 | HD5 | Head data 5 |
| 2 | 0 | HD1 | Head data 1 |
| 3 | 0 | HD13 | Head data 13 |
| 4 | 0 | HD9 | Head data 9 |
| 5 | 0 | HD21 | Head data 21 |
| 6 | 0 | HD17 | Head data 17 |
| 7 | - | COM | Common |
| 8 | - | COM | Common |
| 9 | - | COM | Common |
| 10 | 0 | HD24 | Head data 24 |
| 11 | 0 | HD16 | Head data 16 |
| 12 | 0 | HD12 | Head data 12 |
| 13 | 0 | HD8 | Head data 8 |
| 14 | 0 | HD20 | Head data 20 |
| 15 | 0 | HD4 | Head data 4 |
| 16 | I | TEMP2 | Head temperature |
| 17 | - | TEMP1 | + v u |

Table A-3. CN3 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| N o | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | I | /PAUSE | Pause switch |
| 2 | - | IREADY | Fixed GND |
| 3 | 0 | TXS | Transmit signal (LED) |
| 4 | 0 | /LDLED | LED data latch |
| 5 | 0 | /CKS | Shift clock |
| 6 | 0 | /LDSW | Load switch data |
| 7 | I | RXS | Receive data (switch) |
| 8 | - | +5 | +5 VDC |
| 9 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 10 | - | SHLD | Shield ground |
| 11 | I | POWER1 | Power switch |
| 12 | - | POWER2 | Fixed GND |

I Table A-7. CN7 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 0 | HD3 | Head data 3 |
| 2 | 0 | HD11 | Head data 11 |
| 3 | 0 | HD2 | Head data 2 |
| 4 | 0 | HD19 | Head data 19 |
| 5 | 0 | HD7 | Head data 7 |
| 6 | - | COM | Common |
| 7 | - | COM | Common |
| 8 | - | COM | Common |
| 9 | 0 | HD22 | Head data 22 |
| 10 | 0 | HD15 | Head data 15 |
| 11 | 0 | HD18 | Head data 18 |
| 12 | 0 | HD23 | Head data 23 |
| 13 | 0 | HD10 | Head data 10 |
| 14 | 0 | HD14 | Head data 14 |
| 15 | 0 | HD6 | Head data 6 |

Table A-13. CN13 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | O | PSC | Power switch signal |
| 2 |  | +5 | +5 VDC |
| 3 | - | +5 | +5 VDC |
| 4 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 5 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 6 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 7 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 8 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 9 | - | +35 | +35 VDC |
| 10 | - | +35 | +35 VDC |
| 11 | - | +35 | +35 VDC |

I Table A-8. CN8 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | I | CRHOME | DETECTOR ASSY.,HP |
| 2 | - | GND | Signal ground |

I Table A-9. CN9 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | I | PE2 | DETECTOR ASSY.,PE, REAR |
| 2 | - | GND | Signal ground |

I Table A-10. CN10 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | I | PE1 | DETECTORASSY.,PE,FRONT |
| 2 | - | GND | Signal ground |

I Table A-1 1. CN1 1 BOARD ASSY.,MAIN(C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 1 | GAP | DETECTOR ASSY., PLATEN |
| 2 | - | GND | Signal ground |

I Table A-12. CN12 BOARD ASSY., MAIN (C062 MAIN)

| No. | I/O | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 1 | LEVER | DETECTOR ASSY., RELEASE |
| 2 | - | GND | Signal ground |








220-260vac




Figure A-10. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSB BOARD) Component Layout


Figure A-11. BOARD ASSY., POWER SUPPLY (C062 PSE Board) Component Layout

(20)

## Figure A-13. LQ-570 Exploded Diagram

앙N


Figure A-14. LQ-1070 Exploded Diagram

REV.-B


Figure A-15. Model-5E10 Exploded Diagram


Figure A-16. Model-5E60 Exploded Diagram

Table A-14. Part Number Reference Table

| Ref. <br> No. | Description | Ref. No. | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 100 | Lower housing assembly | 507 | Compression spring (200 gm) |
| 101 | Bottom shield plate | 508 | Plain washer (M5 x 16) |
| 102 | FFC holding plate | 509 | Spur gear ( 40 mm ) |
| 103 | I/F grounding plate | 510 | Left main frame |
| 104 | Printer front cover assembly | 511 | Combination gear |
| 105 | Sheet guide frame assembly | 512 | Spur gear (13.2 mm) |
| 106 | Upper housing assembly | 513 | RD ratchet |
| 107 | Front paper guide | 514 | Ribbon planet lever assembly |
| 108 | Knob | 515 | PF motor |
| 109 | Front housing | 520 | HP detector |
| 110 | Front cover | 521 | CR motor frame assembly |
| 111 | Front edge guide | 522 | CR motor |
| 112 | Rubber foot | 523 | Belt pulley |
| 113 | Upper connector cover | 524 | E cover assembly |
| 114 | I/F board guide | 525 | Ball bearing |
| 115 | Panel sheet | 526 | CBS(0) screw |
| 116 | Power switch key top | 527 | Type E retaining ring (2.3) |
| 117 | Main board shield plate | 529 | Release detector |
| 118 | DIP switch cover | 530 | Carriage assembly |
| 119 | Grounding plate | 531 | Head lock lever spring |
| 120 | Right shield plate | 532 | Left head lock lever |
| 121 | Logo plate | 533 | Right head lock lever |
| 122 | CBB(C) screw (M4 x 14) | 534 | Head grounding plate |
| 123 | CB(0) screw ( $\mathrm{M} 4 \times 8$ ) | 535 | Rear PE detector |
| 124 | Hexagon nut (M4) | 536 | Front PE detector |
| 125 | CBB(C) screw (M3x 10) | 537 | Platen detector |
| 126 | CBS(C) screw (M3 $\times 10$ ) | 538 | Platen |
| 127 | CBB(P) screw (M3 $\times 12$ ) | 539 | Bushing ( 8 mm ) |
| 128 | CBB(P) screw (M4 $\times 25$ ) | 540 | Spur gear ( 34 mm ) |
| 129 | CB screw (M3 $\times 6$ ) | 541 | Plain washer ( $8 \times 0.5 \times 15$ ) |
| 130 | CB screw ( $\mathrm{M} 3 \times 6$ ) | 542 | Leaf spring ( $8.2 \times 0.15 \times 15$ ) |
| 131 | Sound absorber | 543 544 | Type C retaining ring Tractor assembly |
| 200 | Main board assembly | 545 | Left tractor assembly |
|  |  | 546 | Right tractor assembly |
| 300 | Power supply board assembly | 547 | Left tractor frame |
| 310 | Fuse | 548 | Right tractor frame |
| 302 | CBS screw (M3 x 8) | 549 | Paper support |
| 330 | Wire harness | 550 | Tractor guide shaft |
|  |  | 551 552 | Tractor shaft |
| 400 | Power cable VD31303SA-1OA Power cable (BS31303SA-SR) | 552 553 | Tractor frame lever Spur gear (17 mm) |
| 402 | Power cable (AS31 303SI) | 554 | Compression spring (150 gm) |
| 403 | Power cable VD00303SA-1 OA | 555 | Type E retaining ring (6) |
| 410 | Power cable assembly | 556 | Paper guide |
| 411 | Power cable assembly | 557 | Shafl release |
| 412 | Wire harness | 558 | PF drive roller assembly |
| 450 | Panel board assembly | 559 | PF lever assembly. |
|  |  | 560 | Paper guide assembly support |
| 500 | M-5EIO printer mechanism | 561 | Compression spring ( 1300 gm ) |
| 502 | Main base frame | 562 | Spur gear ( 11.5 mm ) |
| 503 | Right main frame | 563 | Spur gear ( 18 mm ) |
| 504 | Tractor clutch cam | 564 | Eject cover |
| 505 | Combination gear ( $8.5 \mathrm{~mm}, 30 \mathrm{~mm}$ ) | 565 | Eject roller assembly |
| 506 | Spur gear ( 40 mm ) | 566 | Upper platen cover |

Table A-14. Part Number Reference Table (Cont.)

| Ref. <br> NO. | Descriptlon | Ref. No. | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 567 | Spur gear ( 17 mm ) |  |  |
| 568 | Paper tension spring |  |  |
| 569 | Type E.retaining ring (5) |  |  |
| 570 | CR guide shaft |  |  |
| 571 | G adjustment lever |  |  |
| 572 | Driven pulley |  |  |
| 573 | Belt pulley flange |  |  |
| 574 | Driven pulley shaft |  |  |
| 575 | Plain washer ( $3.2 \times 0.5 \times 7$ ) |  |  |
| 576 | Front head cable |  |  |
| 577 | Rear head cable |  |  |
| 578 | CR grounding plate |  |  |
| 579 | Ribbon mask |  |  |
| 580 | Release lever |  |  |
| 581 | Release support shaft |  |  |
| 582 | Timing belt |  |  |
| 583 | Oil pad |  |  |
| 584 | Parallel adjusting bushing |  |  |
| 585 586 | Head cable holder <br> Extension spring ( 778 gm ) |  |  |
| 587 | Extension spring ( 32 gm ) |  |  |
| 588 | Lower platen cover |  |  |
| 589 | RD cover |  |  |
| 590 | CBS(C) screw (P2) (M3 x 10) |  |  |
| 591 | CBP(C) screw (M3 $\times 10$ ) |  |  |
| 592 |  |  |  |

REV.-A

## A. 5 CASE OUTLINE DRAWING



Figure A-17. LQ-570 Case Outline Drawing


Figure A-18. LQ-1070 Case Outline Drawing
Appendix B
The LQ-570+/1070+
Differences between the LQ-570+/1070+ and the LQ-570/1070 ..... B-1
Important Component Differences ..... B-1
Faster Print Speeds. ..... B-1
Faster Bit Image Print Speeds ..... B-2
Faster Paper Feed Speeds. ..... B-2
Lower Noise ..... B-2
Additional Scalable Fonts ..... B-2
Character Table Differences ..... B-3
Jumper Differences ..... B-4
Printer Weight Differences ..... B-4
Printer Height Differences ..... B-4
Weight Difference for Cut Sheet Carbonless
Duplicating Paper ..... B-4
Cl07 MAIN Board Component Layout. ..... B-5
LQ-570+/1070+ Control Circuit Operation. ..... B-6
Reset Circuit. ..... B-9
Sensor Circuits. ..... B-11
CR Motor Drive Circuit. ..... B-12
PF Motor Drive Circuit. ..... B-13
Printhead Drive Circuit. ..... B-14
Disassembly Procedures Unique to the LQ-570+/1070+ ..... B-15
Removing the Cl07 MAIN Board Assembly. ..... B-15
Removing the C062 PSB Power Supply Board Assembly. ..... B-17
Removing the C062 PNL Board. ..... B-18
Adjustments. ..... B-19
Circuit Adjustment. ..... B-19
Troubleshooting. ..... B-20
Error Codes ..... B-23
Figures
Figure B-1. C107 MAIN Board Component Layout. ..... B-5
Figure B-2. Control Circuit Block Diagram ..... B-6 ..... B-6
Figure B-3. Data Flow. ..... B-7
Figure B-4. Reset Circuit Block Diagram ..... B-9
Figure B-5. Timing of Reset Signal ..... B-10
Figure B-6. Sensor Circuit Block Diagram ..... B-11
Figure B-7. CR Motor Drive Circuit. ..... B-12
Figure B-8. PF Motor Drive Circuit. ..... B-13
Figure B-9. Printhead Drive Circuit ..... B-14
Figure B-10. Removing the Main Board Shield Plate ..... B-15
Figure B-11. Main Board Assembly. ..... B-16
Figure B-12. Removing the Power Supply Board Assembly ..... B-17
Figure B-13. Removing the Panel Board Assembly
Figure B-13. Removing the Panel Board Assembly ..... B-18 ..... B-18
Figure B-14. Printhead Connector Wire Assignments ..... B-22
Figure B-15. LQ-570+/1070+ Connection Diagram ..... B-23
Figure B-16. Cl07 MAIN Board Component Layout ..... B-29
Figure B-17. C107 MAIN Board Circuit Diagram ..... B-31

## Tables

Table B-1 Component Compatibility ..... B-1
Table B-2. Print Speed Comparison ..... B-1
Table B-3. Bit Image Print Speed Comparison. ..... B-2
Table B-4. DIP Switch SW1 Differences ..... B-3
Table B-5. Character Set Selection (Same for Both Printers) ..... B-3
Table B-6. Character Table Selection Differences ..... B-3
Table B-7. Differences in the Cl07 MAIN for the LQ-570+ and LQ-1070+ ..... B-5
Table B-8. Functions of the Main IC and Circuits ..... B-8
Table B-9. CR Motor Drive Modes ..... B-12
Table B-10. Printhead Test Points ..... B-20
Table B-11. Motor Test Points, ..... B-20
Table B-12. Driver Test Points ..... B-21
Table B-13. Board Connector Summary ..... B-24
Table B-14. C107 MAIN Board - CN2. ..... B-25
Table B-15. C107 MAIN Board - CN3, ..... B-26
Table B-16. C107 MAIN Board - CN4 ..... B-26
Table B-17. C107 MAIN Board - CN5 ..... B-26
Table B-18. C107 MAIN Board - CN6. ..... B-27
Table B-19. C107 MAIN Board - CN7. ..... B-27
Table B-20. C107 MAIN Board - CN8 ..... B-27
Table B-21. C107 MAIN Board - CN9 ..... B-28
Table B-22. C107 MAIN Board-CN10 ..... B-28
Table B-23. Cl07 MAIN Board-CN11 ..... B-28
Table B-24. C107 MAIN Board - CN12 ..... B-28
Table B-25. C107 MAIN Board - CN13 ..... B-28

## Appendix B. The LQ-570+/1070+

This appendix describes the LQ-570+/1070+ printer, a small, low-cost printer with advanced paper-handling features that is compatible with the LQ-570 and LQ-1070.

## Differences between the LQ-570+/1070+ and LQ-570/1070

## Important Component Differences

Table B-l. Component Compatibility

| LQ-570+/1 070+ | LQ-570/1070 | Comments |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| CI 07 MAIN boards | CO62 MAIN boards | Not interchangeable. (Different boards for <br> LQ-570+ and LQ-1 070+. See Table B-7.) |
| CR motor | CR motor | Not interchangeable. |
| Printhead | Printhead | New printhead built for quieter operation. |
| M-5J10 (LQ-570+) <br> M-5J60 (LQ-1 070+) <br> printer mechanism | M-5E10 (LQ-570) <br> M-5E60 (LQ-I 070) <br> printer mechanism | The major difference is the CR motor. |

## Faster Print Speeds

Table B-2. Print Speed Comparison

| Printer Model | Print Pitch | Condensed | Columns | Character Pitch | Printing Speed |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  | Draft | LQ | HSD |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { LQ-570+/1 070+ } \\ & \text { LQ-57011 } 070 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 10 \\ & 10 \end{aligned}$ | OFF OFF | $\begin{aligned} & 80 / 136 \\ & 801136 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 10 \\ & 10 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 225 \\ & 210 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 75 \\ & 70 \end{aligned}$ | NA 225 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { LQ-570+/1 070+ } \\ & \text { LQ-570/1 } 070 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 10 \\ & 10 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ON } \\ & \text { ON } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 137 / 164 \\ & 1371164 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 17.1 \\ & 17.1 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 192 \\ & 180 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 128 \\ & 120 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { NA } \\ & \text { NA } \end{aligned}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { LQ-570+/1 070+ } \\ & \text { LQ-57011 } 070 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 12 \\ & 12 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { OFF } \\ & \text { OFF } \end{aligned}$ | 961204 961204 | $\begin{aligned} & 12 \\ & 12 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 269 \\ & 252 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 90 \\ & 84 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { NA } \\ & \text { NA } \end{aligned}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { LQ-570+/1 070+ } \\ & \text { LQ-57011 } 070 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 12 \\ & 12 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ON } \\ & \text { ON } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 160 / 233 \\ & 1601233 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 20 \\ & 20 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 225 \\ & 210 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 154 \\ & 140 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { NA } \\ & \text { NA } \end{aligned}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { LQ-570+/1 070+ } \\ & \text { LQ-57011 } 070 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 15 \\ & 15 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { OFF } \\ & \text { OFF } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 1201272 \\ & 120 / 272 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 15 \\ & 15 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 337 \\ & 315 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 112 \\ & 105 \end{aligned}$ | NA NA |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { LQ-570+/1 070+ } \\ & \text { LQ-570/1 } 070 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 15 \\ & 15 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ON } \\ & \text { ON } \end{aligned}$ | INVALID INVALID |  |  |  |  |

Note: HSD = high-speed draft. The LQ-570+/1 070+ has no high-speed draft.

## Faster Bit Image Print Speeds

Table B-3. Bit Image Print Speed Comparison

| Pins | Bit Image <br> Printing Mode | Density <br> (dpi) | Printable <br> Dots | LQ-570+/1070+ <br> Speed (ips) | LQ-57011 070 <br> Speed (ips) |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8 | Single-density | 60 | 480 | 22.5 | 21.0 |
| 8 | Dual-density | 120 | 960 | 11.2 | 10.5 |
| 8 | Double-speed, |  |  |  |  |
| 8 | dual-density | 120 | 960 | 22.5 | 21.0 |
|  | Quadruple- |  |  | 11.2 |  |
| 8 | density | 240 | 1920 | 11.2 | 10.5 |
| 8 | CRT graphics | 80 | 640 | 15.0 | 10.5 |
| 24 | CRT graphics II | 90 | 720 | 22.5 | 14.0 |
| 24 | Suale-density | 60 | 480 | 11.2 | 21.0 |
| 24 | CRT graphics II | 90 | 960 | 15.0 | 10.5 |
| 24 | Triple-density | 180 | 1440 | 7.5 | 14.0 |
| 24 | Hex-density | 360 | 2880 | 7.5 | 7.0 |

Faster Paper Feed Speeds
Friction without CSF

| LQ-570+ | LQ-1 070+ | LQ-570 | LQ-1 070 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & 65.2 \mathrm{~ms} \\ & 2.8 \mathrm{ips} \end{aligned}$ | 81.1 ms 2.8 ips | 77.6 ms 2.2 ips |  | per 1/6-inch ( 4.23 mm ) feed continuous |

Friction with CSF

| LQ-570+ | LQ-1 070+ | LQ-570 | LQ-1 070 |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 73.1 ms <br> 2.5 ips | 86.0 ms <br> 2.5 ips | 77.6 ms <br> 2.2 ips |  | per 1/6-inch $(4.23 \mathrm{~mm})$ feed <br> continuous |

Tractor

| LQ-570+ | LQ-1 070+ | LQ-570 | LQ-1 070 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & 65.2 \mathrm{~ms} \\ & 2.8 \mathrm{ids} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 81.1 \mathrm{~ms} \\ & 2.8 \mathrm{ips} \end{aligned}$ | 77.6 ms 2.2 ips |  | per 1/6-inch ( 4.23 mm ) feed continuous |
| Tractor (with Multipart Paper) |  |  |  |  |
| LQ-570+ | LQ-1 070+ | LQ-570 | LQ-1070 |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & 80.6 \mathrm{~ms} \\ & 2.2 \mathrm{ips} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 90.9 \mathrm{~ms} \\ & 2.2 \mathrm{ips} \end{aligned}$ |  |  | per 1/6-inch ( 4.23 mm ) feed continuous |

## Additional Scalable Fonts

LQ.570+/1070+ Epson Roman
Epson Sans Serif
Epson Roman T Epson Roman H

LQ-57011070
Epson Roman
Epson San Serif

## Character Table Differences

BRASCII and Abicomp added to LQ-570+/1070+

Table B-4. DIP Dwitch SW1 Differences

| SW | Description | ON | OFF | LQ-570+/1 070+ <br> Factory Setting |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 2 3 | International character set and PC table selection | (See character set selection table below.) |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ON } \\ & \text { ON } \\ & \text { ON } \end{aligned}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & 7 \\ & 8 \end{aligned}$ | Character table <br> Graphic print <br> Not used <br> Input buffer <br> 1 -inch skip | Graphic Unidirectional <br> Invalid <br> ON | Italic <br> Bidirectional <br> Valid <br> OFF | OFF OFF OFF OFF OFF |

Note: For the LQ-570/1 070, SW1 -6 selects high-speed draft. The LQ-570+/1 070+ has no high-speed draft.

Table B-5. Character Set Selection (Same for Both Printers)

| Country | I-I | $\mathbf{1 - 2}$ | $\mathbf{1 - 3}$ | $\mathbf{1 - 4}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| U.S. | ON | ON | ON | OFF |
| France | ON | ON | OFF | OFF |
| Germany | ON | OFF | ON | OFF |
| U.K. | ON | OFF | OFF | OFF |
| Denmark 1 | OFF | ON | ON | OFF |
| Sweden | OFF | ON | OFF | OFF |
| Italy | OFF | OFF | ON | OFF |
| Spain 1 | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

Table B-6. Character Table Selection Differences

| Character Table | 1-1 | 1-2 | 13 | 1-4 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Italic | (Using character set selected above.) |  |  | OFF |
| PC 437 (U.S.) | ON | ON | ON | ON |
| PC 850 (Multilingual) | ON | ON | OFF | ON |
| PC 860 (Portugal) | ON | OFF | ON | ON |
| PC 863 (Canadian-French) | ON | OFF | OFF | ON |
| PC 865 (Norway) | OFF | ON | ON | ON |
| BRASCII (Brazilian Portuguese) | OFF | ON | OFF | ON |
| Abicomp (Brazilian Portuguese) | OFF | OFF | ON | ON |
| PC 437 (U.S.) | OFF | OFF | OFF | ON |

Note: Listings in bold are for the LQ-570+/1070+ only.

## Jumper Differences

LQ-570+/1070+
When jumper J12 is connected to SLIN, the printer recognizes the SELECT IN signal from the host.

LQ-570/1070
When jumper J3 is connected to GND, the SLCT-IN signal is fixed to LOW.

## Printer Weight Difference

LQ-570 +/1070 +
$15 \mathrm{lb} .(6.8 \mathrm{~kg}) / 20 \mathrm{lb} .(9.5 \mathrm{~kg})$
LQ-570/1070

Printer Height Difference
LQ-570+11070+
6.3 inches

LQ-570/1070
6 inches

LQ-570+/1070 +
12 to 15 lb paper, maximum

LQ-570/1070
17 to 24 lb ., maximum

## Lower Noise

LQ-570+11070+
LQ-570/1070
$46.5 \mathrm{~dB}(\mathrm{~A})$
$55 \mathrm{~dB}(\mathrm{~A})$

## Power Consumption

LQ-570 +/1070t LQ-570/1070
33 W / 36 W
33 w
(during a self-test in draft mode at 10 cpi )
Mean Cycles Between Failures (MCBF)
LQ-570+/1070+
3 million lines, excluding printhead (same as LQ-570/1070)
Differences in Power On Function with Buttons Held Down

| Button | LQ-570 | LQ-570/1070+ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LF/FF | Prints PROM version, DIP switch <br> settings, rotating pattern of LQ fonts | Prints rotating pattern of LQ fonts |
| LOAD/ <br> EJECT | Prints PROM version, DIP switch <br> settings, draft font pattern | Prints draft font pattern |
| ALT | No function | Prints PROM version and DIP <br> switch settings and ejects page |

## C107 MAIN Board Component Layout



Figure B-l. C107 MAIN Board Component Layout
Note:
The LQ-570+ and the LQ-1070+ use different versions of the Cl07 MAIN board. The differences between the boards are shown in the table below.

Table B-7. Differences in the Cl07 MAIN for the LQ-570+ and LQ-1070+

|  | LQ-570+ | LQ-1070+ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| IC16 (64K SRAM) | Not installed | Installed |
| BZ1 (Buzzer) and R14 <br> (1K-ohm resistor for buzzer circuit) <br> installed | Installed | Not |
| IC 14 (PROM) | A0262A | W00234 |

## LQ-570+/1070+ Control Circuit Operation

The control circuitry consists of two boards: the Cl07 MAIN board and the CO62 PNL board (the control panel).

The printer's CPU is an 8-bit CPU TMP90C041 running at 10 MHz . It oversees control of all the components of the printer. The E05A50 gate array contains various memory management functions that control the assignment of the memory and I/O areas, and it controls a head gate array IC2 (E05A86), a PU1501 or SW-67129 for the PF and CR motor driver, STA475A(IC4 IC9) is transistor array for the head pins drive, several sensor circuits and so on. Figure B-2 shows the block diagram of the Cl07 Main Board.


Figure B-2. Control Circuit Block Diagram

Table B-8 lists the functions of the main components and circuits of the printer. The CPU converts the print data sent from the host computer to image data (the print image). The image data is then loaded into RAM. Each line of data is processed sequentially. The CPU transfers the print data to the printhead drive circuit. The CPU sends the printhead drive pulse to the printhead drive circuit. The length of this pulse corresponds to the printhead drive voltage. The head drive circuit then outputs the head drive signal.


Figure B-3. Data Flow

Table B-8. Functions of the Main ICarmi Circuits

| IC or Circuit | Location | Functions |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| TMP90C41 | IC21 | Receives data from the host computer and loads the data to the <br> input buffer in RAM (under interrupt processing control). <br> Expands the input data held in the buffer to create image data. <br> Loads this image data to the image buffer in RAM. Transfers the <br> image data to the printhead drive circuit. Also controls various <br> parts of the printer mechanism, such as the motors. |
| E05A50 | IC11 | This gate array consists of three components configured on a <br> single chip: <br> Memory Management Unit <br> Handles CPU memory in ROM, RAM, and mask ROM, and <br> assigns addresses for other devices. <br> Parallel interface (Parallel VF) <br> Holds the parallel interface functions. <br> Reset Circuit <br> Contains the circuit that generates the /RESET signal. |
| PROM | IC14 | IC15 and IC16 |
| RAM | Holds the CPU working area and the various buffers. (1 E is not <br> used for an 80column device and is not installed.) |  |
| The PROM contains the program that runs the CPU. |  |  |

## Reset Circuit

Figure B-4 shows a block diagram for the reset circuit, which issues the /BESET signal to initialize each part of the control circuit as it receives this signal. The conditions when the /RESET signal is output are described below.

## When Turning on the Power Supply

Immediately after power is turned on, PST 529 (IC19) outputs the /PON pulse. The E05A50 (IC11) receives this pulse and outputs the /DISC pulse. The electrical charge in capacitor C29 is then discharged. After this, the /THLD port within E05A50 detects the low level and outputs the /RESET signal from the /OUT port of IC19. After time has elapsed, the charge in the condenser builds up again. The /THLD signal is canceled and then the /RESET signal is canceled.

Resets Performed by the CPU Itself (CPU Self-Reset)
The CPU outputs the /RESET signal if there is a /RESET request for E05A50 and E05A50 output the /DISC pulse.


Figure B-4. Reset Circuit Block Diagram


Figure B-5. Timing of Reset Signal

## Sensor Circuits

Figure B-6 shows a block diagram for the sensor circuits. Detection of any excessive printhead temperature causes the TEMP2 signal to be sent directly to the CPU. Other signals, such as the CRHOME signal, pass through each low pass filter before reaching the CPU. Terminals P50 to P55 on the CPU are used for the A/D converter. The Vref circuit generates the A/D converter reference voltage Vref.


Figure B-6. Sensor Circuit Block Diagram

## CR Motor Drive Circuit

Figure B-7 shows the CR motor drive circuit, which uses an open-loop, constantcurrent drive control to drive the CR motor. The motor is driven with 2-2 phase excitation and 1-2 phase excitation. The 2-2 phase excitation corresponds to two 1-2 phase excitation steps, so for each single step phase change of a $2-2$ phase excitation motor, the carriage moves $1 / 120$ inch. For each single step phase change of a 1-2 phase excitation motor, the carriage moves $1 / 240$ inch.

The CR motor drive circuit of the STK-67128 detects the amount of current flow in the CR motor coil and regulates it. The current flowing through the coil varies depending on the speed of the CR motor. The amount of current is set by the CPU via the E05A50 I/O port. Signals are sent to Vrefl or Vref2 on the STK-67128. The SIX-67128 sets the coil current to correspond to the CR motor speed. Ports P60 to P63 on the CPU are used exclusively as phase control ports for the stepping motor.

## TMP90C041



Figure B-7. CR Motor Drive Circuit

Table B-9. CR Motor Drive Modes

| Drive Mode | Excitation Type | Type Drive Frequency | Standard Print Character |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $3 \times$ speed | $2-2$ phase | 2695 pulses per second $(\mathrm{pps})$ | Draft |
| $2 \times$ speed | $2-2$ phase | 1773 pps | High speed LO |
| $1.5 \times$ speed | $2-2$ phase | 1347 pps | Draft (emphasized, condensed) |
| $4 / 3 \times$ speed | I-2 phase | 1191 pps | LQ |
| $1 \times$ speed | I-2 phase | 1796 pps |  |
| $3 / 4 \times$ speed | I-2 phase | 1347 pps |  |
| $2 / 3 \times$ speed | $1-2$ phase | 119 pps | 698 pps |
| $1 / 2 \times$ speed | I-2 phase |  |  |

## PF Motor Drive Circuit

The stepping motor that the printer uses to advance the paper can advance it by a minimum of $1 / 360$ inch. The motor is a $2-2$ phase or $1-2$ phase, constant-voltage drive type. P70 to P73 on the CPU are the phase control ports for the stepping motor. PF motor phase data is output through these ports. Cl to C 4 are turned on and off within the PU1501 (IC3) based on the phase data sent from the CPU.

When the paper advance motor is running, the supply voltage to the PF motor coil is +35 V . When the paper advance motor is not running and is in the hold state, the supply voltage to the coil is +5 V . Switching between these two supply voltages occurs at the CP terminal of the PU1501 (IC3) when the switch is turned on or off.


Figure B-8. PF Motor Drive Circuit

## Printhead Drive Circuit

Figure B-9 shows the printhead drive circuit block diagram. The print data already is expanded to create the image data. The CPU splits up this data three times and transfers this information to the latch circuit within the head gate array (IC2). The CPU samples the voltage from the +35 V line via the ND converter. The CPU outputs a pulse via P83, the CPU time output port. The length of this pulse corresponds to the voltage of the +35 V line. This pulse becomes the head drive signal. In this way, head gate array (IC2) outputs head drive signals (signals HD1 to HD24) that relate to voltage level through the width of the pulses. These signals are output to the head for each of the section of print data that were created by subdividing the data three times before sending.

By sampling the +35 V line voltage and determining the length of the head drive signal, it is possible to maintain the energy supplied to the head at a constant level. If the voltage of the +35 V line is HIGH, the CPU shortens the output pulse. If the voltage of the +35 V line is LOW, the CPU lengthens the output pulse.


Figure B-9. Printhead Drive Circuit

## Disassembly Procedures Unique to the LQ-570+/1070+

For the most part, disassembly of the LQ-570+/1070+ is the same as for the LQ$570 / 1070$. For the power supply and control panel, however, there a different number of screws to remove for the LQ-570+/1070+ than the LQ-570/1070. For your convenience, this section describes disassembly of the Cl07 MAIN board, power supply board, and control panel. Refer to Chapter 3 of the LQ-570/1070 Service Manual for other disassembly procedures.

## Removing the Cl07 MAIN Board Assembly

1. Remove the upper housing assembly. (See Section 3.2.2.2.)
2. Remove 1 CB (M3 x 6) screw securing the holding plate for the flat flexible cable (FFC) to the main board shield plate. Then remove the holding plate.
3. Disconnect the FFC (front and rear head cable) by disconnecting the cables from connectors CN6 and CN7 on the main board assembly.
4. Remove the $3 \mathrm{CBB}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10)$ screws that hold the main board shield plate to the main board assembly, and remove the shield plate.


Figure B-IO. Removing the Main Board Shield Plate
5. Remove 1 CBB (M4 x 10) screw that holds the right shield plate to the main board assembly. Remove 1 CBB (C) (M4 x 14) screw that holds the right shield plate to the lower housing assembly. Then remove the right shield plate.
6. Remove cables from the following connectors on the main board: CN3 (brown, 12 pins); CN4 (white, 5 pins); CN5 (white, 6 pins); CN8 (yellow, 2 pins); CN9 (black, 2 pins); CN10 (blue, 2 pins); CN11 (white, 2 pins); and CN12 (red, 2 pins).
7. Remove $3 \mathrm{CBB}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10)$ screws and $1 \mathrm{CB}(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 8)$ screw that hold the main board to the lower case. Then remove the main board.

## CAUTION

Both connector CN11 and CN12 are 2-pin connectors, so be careful not to mix them up when you connect them to the main board:

BLACK WIRE AND WHITE WIRE: CN11
GRAY WIRES:
CN12


Figure B-11. Main Board Assembly
ADJUSTMENT REQUIRED
After you have replaced the main board assembly, you must adjust the bidirectional print alignment. See Section 4.2 in the LQ-570/1070 Service Manual.

## Removing the C062 PSB Power Supply Board Assembly

1. Remove the upper housing assembly. (See Section 3.2.2.2.)
2. Remove the cable from connector CN13 on the main board assembly.
3. Remove the cable from connector CN1 on the power supply board assembly.
4. Remove $5 \mathrm{CBB}(\mathrm{C})(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10)$ screws and $1 \mathrm{CB}(\mathrm{M} 3 \times 8)$ screw that hold the power supply board assembly to the lower housing assembly. Then remove the power supply.

Note: The power supply is secured with a one-way screw that requires the special tool illustrated below for removal.


Special Tool


Figure B-12. Removing the Power Supply Board Assembly

## Removing the C062 PNL Board

1. Remove the front housing. (See Section 3.2.2.1.)
2. Remove the $5 \mathrm{CBB}(\mathrm{C})$ ( $\mathrm{M} 3 \times 10$ ) screws that hold the panel board assembly to the front housing. Remove the panel board assembly.


Figure B-13. Removing the Panel Board Assembly

## Adjustments

The adjustments for the LQ-570+/1070+ are the same as those for the LQ-570/1070, with the exception of the circuit adjustment described in Section 4.3. This adjustment is not applicable to U.S. dealers, because the variable resistor is set correctly for the main board in the factory and does not need to be changed. The LQ$570+1070+$ circuit adjustment is described below only for Epson dealers outside the U.S., who may require this information.

## Circuit Adjustment

The C107 MAIN board contains variable resistor VR1, which is used for balancing the circuitry. When any of the following components are replaced, the circuitry must be balanced by adjusting VR1.

R6, R7, TL431 (IC1), and VR1
If the circuitry is not properly adjusted, the CPU A/D converter functions abnormally and causes irregular printer operation.

To adjust the circuit, attach a digital multimeter to check terminal TP1 (Vref voltage) on the C107 MAIN board. Turn on the printer and adjust variable resistor VR1 until you obtain a reading of 4.741 V .

## Troubleshooting

The tables below provide the test points you can use to check the motors, printhead, and drivers for the LQ-570+/107\&.

Table B-10. Printhead Test Points

| Connector | Commons | Test Pins | Test Method <br> (Power off. Set Meter to Ohms) | Resistance |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CN6 | $\mathbf{7 , 8 , 9}$ | $\mathbf{1 , 2 , 3 , 4 , 5 ,}$ <br> $6,10,11,12$, <br> $13,14,15$ | Place one lead on one of the commons <br> and the other lead on each of the test <br> pins. | 45.5 ohms <br> $+/-3.2$ ohms <br> (at $77^{\circ} \mathrm{F}, 25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) |
| CN7 | $6,7,6$ | $1,2,3,4,5$, <br> $9,10,11,12, ~$ <br> $13,14,15$ | Place one lead on one of the commons <br> and the other lead on each of the test <br> pins. | 45.5 ohms <br> $+/-3.2$ ohms <br> (at $770 \mathrm{~F}, 25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) |
| CN6 <br> (Thermistor) | - | 16 and 17 | Place one lead on each of the thermistor <br> pins. | 3 K ohms (decreases <br> as temperature <br> increases) |

Table B-11. Motor Test Points

| Connector | Commons | Test Pins | Test Method <br> (Power off. Set Meter to Ohms) | Resistance |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| CN4 <br> CR Motor | 5 | $1,2,3,4$ | Place one lead on one of the commons <br> and the other lead on each of the test <br> pins. | 19 ohms <br> $+/-7$ ohms <br> (at $770^{\circ} \mathrm{F}, 25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) |
| CN5 <br> PF Motor | 6 | 1,2 | Place one lead on one of the commons <br> and the other lead on each of the test <br> pins. | 79 ohms <br> $+/-5$ ohms <br> (at 770 |

Note:
Common pins may be reversed for the PF motor. If you do not obtain a proper reading with one common, try the other common. (If you leave CN5 connected when you make the check, pins 5 and 6 are tied together.)

Table B-12. Driver Test Points

| Driver | Test Point 1 | Test Point 2 | Test Method (Power off. Set Meter to Diodes) | Reading |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Printhead 1C4-1C9 (STA475A) | GND | CN6 pins 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, $6,10,11,12$, 13, 14, 15 <br> CN7 pins 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, $9,10,11,12$, $13,14,15$ | Disconnect the printhead connector. <br> Place the + lead on GND and the <br> - lead on each of the test pins. | Consistent readings within +/- $20 \%$. |
| PF Motor <br> IC3 (PU1501) <br> PF Common | GND <br> CN5 pin 5 or6 | CN5 pins 1, 2, 3, 4 <br> CN4 pin 5 | Disconnect the paper feed motor. <br> Place the + lead on GND and the <br> - lead on each of the test pins. <br> Place the + lead on CN5 pin 5 or 6 and the - lead on pin CN4 pin 5. | Consistent readings within $+/-20 \%$. <br> Approximately .581 |
| CR Motor IC10 (STK6712) | GND | CN4 pins $1,2,3,4$ | Disconnect the carriage motor. <br> Place the - lead on pin 5 and the + lead on each of the test pins. | Consistent readings within $+/-20 \%$. |

## Error Codes

The printer indicates errors with the following beep codes:

- 3 beeps
paper out error
- 5 beeps carriage error

After beeping, the printer goes off line and enters the error mode. If the printer has detected a fatal error (indicated by 5 long beeps), you can find out what type of error occurred by pressing the LOAD/EJECT or PAPER FEED button on the control panel. The printer lights a FONT indicator to signal the type of error.

| Indicator | Error |
| :--- | :--- |
| DRAFT | Carriage control error. |
| COURIER | Illegal voltage from power supply circuit. |
| ROMAN | Paper feed motor control error. |
| SANS SERIF | Illegal thermistor resistance in printhead. <br> (Also printhead not installed or broken.) |
| PRESTIGE | Firmware problem. |
| SCRIPT | Illegal data read from the character generator. |

The figure below shows how printhead connector pins are assigned to the dot wires in the printhead.


Figure B-14. Printhead Connector Wire Assignments

## Reference Materials

This section contains tables, diagrams, and schematics specific to the LQ-
$570+/ 1070+$. The figure below is a connection diagram for the Cl07 MAIN board and the M-5J10 printer mechanism (for the LQ-570+) or M-5J60 printer mechanism (for the LQ-1070+).


Figure B-15. LQ-570+/1070+ Connection Diagram

Table B-13. Board Connector Summary

| Board | Connector | Function | Pins |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Panel Board Assembly | CN1 | Control panel input to main board | 12 |
| Power Supply Board | CN1 | AC power input | 2 |
| Assembly | DC power input | 11 |  |
| Cl 07 MAIN Board | CN2 | Parallel interface | 36 |
| Assembly | CN2 | Control panel | 36 |
|  | CN3 | CR motor | 12 |
|  | CN4 | PF motor | 5 |
|  | CN5 | Printhead | 17 |
|  | CN6 | Printhead | 15 |
|  | CN7 | HP sensor | 2 |
|  | CN8 | Rear PE sensor | 2 |
|  | CN9 | Front PE sensor | 2 |
|  | CN10 | Platen gap sensor | 2 |
|  | CN11 | Release lever sensor | 2 |
|  | CN12 | DC power input | 11 |

Table B-14. Cl 07 MAIN Board - CN2

| Pin No | vo | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | - | +5V | +5 VDC |
| 2 | - | +5 v | +5 VDC |
| 3 | - | +5V | +5VDC |
| 4 | - | +5 v | +5VDC |
| 5 | - | +5V | +5 VDC |
| 6 | - | +5V | +5VDC |
| 7 | 0 | TXD | Transmit data |
| 8 | 0 | /READY | Ready to receive data |
| 9 |  | RXD | Receive data |
| 10 | - | NC | Not connected |
| 11 | 0 | /RST | Reset |
| 12 | 0 | INH | Inhibit |
| 13 |  | /CMREQ | Command request |
| 14 |  | /WRRDY | Write ready |
| 15 |  | /RDREQ | Read request |
| 16 | 0 | WR | Write |
| 17 | 0 | /RD | Read |
| 18 | 0 | ICS | Chip select |
| 19 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 20 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 21 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 22 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 23 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 24 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| 25 | 0 | А3 | Address bus bit 3 |
| 26 | 0 | A2 | Address bus bit 2 |
| 27 | 0 | AI | Address bus bit 1 |
| 28 | 0 | A0 | Address bus bit 0 |
| 29 | 1/0 | D7 | Data bus bit 7 |
| 30 | vo | D6 | Data bus bit 6 |
| 31 | $1 / 0$ | D5 | Data bus bit 5 |
| 32 | 1/0 | D4 | Data bus bit 4 |
| 33 | vo | D3 | Data bus bit 3 |
| 34 | 1/0 | D2 | Data bus bit 2 |
| 35 | /10 | D1 | Data bus bit 1 |
| 36 | 1/0 | DO | Data bus bit 0 |

Table B-15. C107 MAlNV Baxid - CN3

| Pin No. | VO | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | I | /PAUSE | PAUSE button |
| 2 | - | /READY | Fixed to GND |
| 3 | 0 | TXS | Transmit signal (LED) |
| 4 | 0 | LDLED | LED data latch |
| 5 | 0 | /CKS | Shift clock |
| 6 | 0 | LDSW | Load button data |
| 7 | I | RXS | Receive data (button) |
| 8 | - | +5 v | +5 VDC |
| 9 | - | GND | Signal ground |
| $\mathbf{1 0}$ | - | SHLD | Signal ground |
| 11 | $I$ | POWER 1 | Power button |
| 12 | - | POWER 2 | Fixed to GND |

Table B-16. Cl07 MAIN Board - CN4

| Pin | No. vo | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 0 | CRA | CR motor phase A |
| 2 | 0 | CR-A | CR motor phase -A |
| 3 | 0 | CUB | CR motor phase B |
| 4 | 0 | CR-B | CR motor phase -B |
| 5 | 0 | CRCOM | CR motor common |

Table B-l 7. Cl07 MAIN Board - CN5

| Pin No. | VO | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | $\mathbf{0}$ | PFA | PF motor phase A |
| 2 | 0 | PF-A | PF motor phase -A |
| 3 | 0 | PFB | PF motor phase B |
| 4 | 0 | PF-B | PF motor phase -B |
| 5 | 0 | PFCOM | PF motor common |
| 6 | 0 | PFCOM | PF motor common |

Table B-18. Cl07 MAIN B ard - CN6

| Pin No. | VO | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD5 | Head data 5 |
| 2 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD1 | Head data 1 |
| 3 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD13 | Head data 13 |
| $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD9 | Head data 9 |
| $\mathbf{5}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD21 | Head data 21 |
| $\mathbf{6}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD17 | Head data 17 |
| $\mathbf{7}$ | $\mathbf{-}$ | COM | Common |
| $\mathbf{8}$ | $\mathbf{-}$ | COM | Common |
| $\mathbf{9}$ | $\mathbf{-}$ | COM | Common |
| $\mathbf{1 0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD24 | Head data 24 |
| 11 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD16 | Head data 16 |
| 12 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD12 | Head data 12 |
| 13 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD8 | Head data 8 |
| 14 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD20 | Head data 20 |
| 15 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD4 | Head data 4 |
| 16 | $\mathbf{1}$ | TEMP2 | Head temperature |
| 17 | $\mathbf{-}$ | TEMP1 | +vu |

Table B-19. Cl07 MAIN B ard - CN7

| Pin No. | vo | Signal Name |  |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD3 | Function |
| 2 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD11 | Head data 3 |
| 3 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD2 | Head data 11 |
| 4 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD19 | Head data 2 |
| 5 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD7 | Head data 19 |
| 6 | - | COM | Head data 7 |
| 7 | - | COM | Common |
| 8 | - | COM | Common |
| 9 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD22 | Common |
| 10 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD15 | Head data 22 |
| 11 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD18 | Head data 15 |
| 12 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD23 | Head data 18 |
| 13 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD10 | Head data 23 |
| 14 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD14 | Head data 10 |
| 15 | $\mathbf{0}$ | HD6 | Head data 14 |

Table B-20. Cl07 MAIN Board -CN8

| Pin | No. | Vo | Signal Name |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 1 | CRHOME | Function |
| 2 | - | GND | Home position sensor <br> Signal ground |

Table R21. Cl07 MAIN Board - CN9

| Pin No. VO | Signal Name | Function |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| $\mathbf{1}$ | I | PE2 | Rear PE sensor <br> 2 |

Table R22. Cl07 MAIN Board - CN10

| Pin No. VO | Signal Name | Function |  |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | I | PE1 | Front PE sensor <br> 2 |

Table B-23. Cl07 MAIN Board - CN11

| Pin No. | vo | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 1 | I | GAP | Platen gap sensor <br> 2 |

TableB-24. Cl07 MAIN Board - CN12

| Pin $N 6$. | VO | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 1 | LEVER | Release lever sensor <br> Signal ground |

Table B-25. Cl07 MAIN Board - CN13

| Pin No. | vo | Signal Name | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 0 | PSC | Power button signal |
| 2 | - | +5 v | +5 VDC |
| 3 |  | +5 v | +5 VDC |
| 4 |  | GND | Signal ground |
| 5 |  | GND | Signal ground |
| 6 |  | GND | Signal ground |
| 7 |  | GND | Signal ground |
| 8 |  | +35 v | Signal ground |
| 9 |  | +35 v | +35 VDC |
| 10 |  | +35 v | +35 VDC |
| 11 |  | +35 VDC |  |



巷


Figure B-16. Cl07 MAIN Board Component Layout


${ }^{*}[$ Woren








